

INTERNATIONAL UNION OF PURE AND APPLIED CHEMISTRY

CHEMISTRY AND HUMAN HEALTH DIVISION†

**IUPAC GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN  
IMMUNOTOXICOLOGY**  
**(IUPAC Provisional Recommendations 20XX)**

*Prepared for publication by:*

DOUGLAS M. TEMPLETON<sup>1,‡</sup>, MICHAEL SCHWENK<sup>2</sup>, RHEINHILD KLEIN<sup>3</sup>, JOHN H. DUFFUS<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathobiology, University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada;* <sup>2</sup>*In den Kreuzäckern 16, Tübingen, Germany;* <sup>3</sup>*Immunopathological Laboratory, Department of Internal Medicine II, Otfried-Müller-Str., Tübingen, Germany;* <sup>4</sup>*The Edinburgh Centre for Toxicology, Edinburgh, Scotland, United Kingdom*

† Membership of the Committee of the Chemistry and Human Health Division during the preparation of this report (2009-2011) was as follows:

*President:* D. M. Templeton (Canada, 2008-2011); *Secretary:* M. Schwenk (Germany, 2010-2011); *Members:* Ole Andersen (Denmark, 2008-2011); Sergey Bachurin (Russia, 2010-2013); Derek Buckle (UK, 2010-2013); Xavier Fuentes-Arderiu (Spain, 2008-2011); Paul Illing (UK, 2010-2013); Yvonne Martin (USA, 2010-2013), Tetsuo Nagano (Japan, 2010-2013); Françoise Pontet (France, 2008-2013).

‡ Corresponding author: Douglas Templeton, Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathobiology, University of Toronto, 1 King's College Circle, Toronto, Ont. M5S 1A8, CANADA

E-mail: [doug.templeton@utoronto.ca](mailto:doug.templeton@utoronto.ca)

---

*Republication or reproduction of this report or its storage and/or dissemination by electronic means is permitted without the need for formal IUPAC permission on condition that an acknowledgment, with full reference to the source, along with use of the copyright symbol ©, the name IUPAC, and the year of publication, are prominently visible. Publication of a translation into another language is subject to the additional condition of prior approval from the relevant IUPAC National Adhering Organization.*

# IUPAC GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN IMMUNOTOXICOLOGY

## (IUPAC Provisional Recommendations 20XX)

**Abstract:** The primary objective of this *Glossary of Terms Used in Immunotoxicology* is to give clear definitions for those who contribute to studies relevant to immunotoxicology but are not themselves immunologists. This applies especially to chemists who need to understand the literature of immunology without recourse to a multiplicity of other glossaries or dictionaries. The Glossary includes terms related to basic and clinical immunology insofar as they are necessary for a self-contained document, and particularly terms related to diagnosing, measuring, and understanding effects of substances on the immune system. The glossary consists of about 1200 terms as primary alphabetical entries, and Annexes of common abbreviations, examples of chemicals with known effects on the immune system, autoantibodies in autoimmune disease, and therapeutic agents used in autoimmune disease and cancer. The authors hope that among the groups who will find this glossary helpful, in addition to chemists, are toxicologists, pharmacologists, medical practitioners, risk assessors, and regulatory authorities. In particular, it should facilitate the worldwide use of chemistry in relation to occupational and environmental risk assessment.

## CONTENTS

PREFACE

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES

REFERENCES FOR ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES

ANNEX I – ABBREVIATIONS

ANNEX II – LIST OF CHEMICALS WITH KNOWN EFFECTS ON THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

ANNEX III – AUTOANTIBODIES IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

ANNEX IV – THERAPEUTIC AGENTS FOR AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS AND TUMORS

## PREFACE

A major goal of IUPAC is to promote “regulation, standardization, or codification” globally in relevant areas of chemistry. To this end, the Division of Chemistry and Human Health (Division VII), recognizing the importance of toxicology to chemists, produced the *Glossary of Terms Used in Toxicology*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., in 2007 [1]. That glossary was intended to provide clear and concise definitions for a range of terms in toxicology and toxicokinetics, primarily for chemists who find themselves working in toxicology or requiring a working knowledge of the subject. It was also recognized that other scientists, regulators, and managers must

1  
2  
3 from time to time interpret toxicological information, and it was hoped that the Glossary  
4 would also provide them with ready access to internationally accepted definitions of  
5 relevant terms. A number of subspecialties broaden the scope of toxicology, and in 2009  
6 the Division expanded the collection of available definitions with publication of a Glossary  
7 of Terms Used in Ecotoxicology [2].  
8  
9

10 Several years ago the Division initiated a project to evaluate mechanisms by which metals  
11 cause immune sensitization in individuals, and subsequently to evaluate critically various  
12 immunological tests for their reliability in determining clinical sensitization to various  
13 metals. This project resulted in a series of IUPAC technical reports [3-7]. During the course  
14 of this work it became evident that immunotoxicology rests upon a specialized vocabulary  
15 that incorporates terms from both immunology and toxicology, sometimes combining them  
16 in unique ways. Thus it was decided to expand further the list of definitions available to  
17 the chemical community and other interested parties by producing a Glossary of Terms  
18 Used in Immunotoxicology. The present document is the result. In order to minimize the  
19 reader's time in consulting additional texts, terms from [1] were included when it was felt  
20 that they were used with particular frequency in immunotoxicology. The authors have also  
21 exercised judgment in deciding which terms from basic immunology should be included for  
22 the reader's convenience.  
23  
24  
25  
26

27 In general, American spelling has been adopted for the entry terms, thus hemolytic anemia,  
28 edema, and tumor (not haemolytic anaemia, oedema, and tumour). Further, somewhat  
29 arbitrary decisions must be made in listing alternative forms of terms as the main entry  
30 (e.g., heterophilic antibody vs. heterophile antibody). In particular, many terms begin with  
31 immune or immuno- (e.g., immune elimination as part of the process of immunoediting).  
32 We have generally tried to use the form we find to be in most common usage, but if a  
33 desired entry is not found under one construction, it should be sought under the other.  
34  
35  
36

37 Many definitions have been compiled from earlier sources, with or without modification, as  
38 indicated in the citation. When no citation is given, the term is newly defined. When a  
39 citation is given, the definition is more or less a quotation from the original. With the  
40 qualification "After", the general concept of the original has been retained with some  
41 rewording, often for consistency with IUPAC guidelines for glossaries. "Modified from"  
42 implies a concept specific to the source is retained but put into original wording. When a  
43 citation is indented following a *Note*, it refers only to the *Note*. The document has been put  
44 together with invaluable input from many colleagues and expert reviewers. Where flaws  
45 remain, they are the responsibility of the authors.  
46  
47  
48

#### 49 **References**

- 50 1. Duffus, J. H., Nordberg, M. and Templeton, D. M. (2007) Glossary of terms used in  
51 toxicology, 2nd ed. Pure Appl. Chem. **79**, 1153-1341.
- 52 2. Nordberg, M., Templeton, D. M., Andersen, O. and Duffus, J. H. (2009) Glossary of terms  
53 used in ecotoxicology. Pure Appl. Chem. **81**, 829-970.
- 54 3. Templeton, D. M. (2004) Mechanisms of immunosensitization to metals. Pure Appl. Chem.  
55 **76**, 1255-1268.
- 56 4. Klein, R., Schwenk, M., Heinrich-Ramm, R. and Templeton, D. M. (2004) Diagnostic  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 relevance of the lymphocyte transformation test for sensitization to beryllium and other  
4 metals. *Pure Appl. Chem.* **76**, 1269-1281.

- 5  
6 5. Klein, R., Schwenk, M. and Templeton, D. M. (2006) Cytokine profiles in human exposure  
7 to metals. *Pure Appl. Chem.* **78**, 2155-2168  
8  
9 6. Schwenk, M., Klein, R. and Templeton, D. M. (2008) Lymphocyte subpopulations in human  
10 exposures to metals. *Pure Appl. Chem.* **80**, 1349-1364.  
11  
12 7. Schwenk, M., Klein, R. and Templeton, D. M. (2009) Immunological effects of mercury.  
13 *Pure Appl. Chem.* **81**, 153-167.

## 14 15 **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES

### $\alpha$ : $\beta$ T cell

Lymphocyte whose *T-cell receptor (TCR)* is a heterodimer of an  $\alpha$  chain and a  $\beta$  chain.

*Note:*  $\alpha$ : $\beta$  T cells represent the majority of *thymocytes* in the *thymus* and *T cells* in the periphery.

See also  *$\alpha$ : $\beta$  T cell receptor*,  *$\gamma$ : $\delta$  T cell*.

### $\alpha$ : $\beta$ T cell receptor

*T-cell receptor (TCR)* consisting of a heterodimer of two different glycoprotein chains, designated  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , assembled into an  $\alpha$ : $\beta$  heterodimer.

### $\alpha$ -fetoprotein (AFP)

*Serum* protein, related to serum albumin in evolution, abundant in the fetus and reoccurring in the serum in liver cancer.

*Note:* it has various *immunomodulating* and *immunosuppressive* effects.

### ABL oncogene

Gene resulting from a chromosomal translocation (9;22) that fuses sequences from the BCR gene with the ABL gene.

*Note 1:* This translocation creates the *Philadelphia chromosome*, found in most human patients with *chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)*.

*Note 2:* The fusion protein encoded by BCR-ABL possesses unregulated *tyrosine kinase* activity.

### ABO blood group system

System of *antigens* expressed on *erythrocytes* and used for typing human blood for *transfusion*.

*Note:* Individuals who do not express A or B antigens on their erythrocytes naturally form *antibodies* against them.

See also *blood group*.

### abzyme

*Antibody* or antibody construct with catalytic activity.

### accessory cell

Cell that assists in the *adaptive immune response* but does not directly mediate specific *antigen* recognition.

*Note 1:* Such cells include *phagocytes*, *mast cells*, *dendritic cells*, and *NK cells*.

*Note 2:* The term is often used to describe *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*.

### accessory molecule

Molecule other than *immunoglobulin (Ig)*, *T-cell receptor (TCR)*, or *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* that participates in *T lymphocyte* recognition and response to *antigen*.

**acquired immunity**

State of protection against pathogen-induced injury, with rapid *immune elimination* of pathogenic invaders owing to previous *immunization* or *vaccination*.

[1]

**acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**

Disease caused by infection with the *human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)*, assuming clinical relevance when an infected patient has lost most of his *CD4+ T cells*, so that infections with opportunistic pathogens occur.

**activation**

See *lymphocyte activation*, *neutrophil activation*.

**activation-induced cell death**

Process by which *immune responses* end in the death of most of the responding *lymphocytes*, leaving only a small number of resting *memory cells*.

See also *apoptosis*.

**active immunization**

*Immunization* with *antigen*, as distinct from the transfer of *antibody* to an unimmunized individual, which is called *passive immunization*.

**active systemic anaphylaxis (ASA) test**

Test for determining whether a drug can cause *anaphylactic reactions* in an animal following *immunization* with the drug.

**acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia (ALL)**

Highly aggressive, undifferentiated form of *lymphoid* malignancy derived from a progenitor cell that is thought to be able to give rise to both *T-* and *B-cell* lineages.

*Note:* Most of these *leukemias* show partial differentiation toward the B-cell lineage (so called B-ALL) whereas a minority show features of T cells (T-ALL).

After [2]

**acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)**

Cancer characterized by rapid growth of abnormal *granulocytes* that accumulate in the *bone marrow*.

**acute phase protein**

Serum protein, mostly produced in the liver, which rapidly changes in concentration (some acute phase proteins increase, some decrease) during the initiation of an *inflammatory response*.

[3]

**acute-phase response (APR)**

Physiological response stimulated by *cytokines* including *interleukin-1*, *interleukin-6*, *interferons*, and *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*, characterized by increased vascular

1  
2  
3 permeability, fever, and increased levels of proteins (thus called *acute phase proteins*)  
4 such as *C-reactive protein (CRP)*, occurring within a few hours of initiation.

5  
6 *Note:* Infection, *inflammation*, tissue injury, and occasionally neoplasms may  
7 trigger the APR.  
8

### 9 **acute rejection**

10 *Rejection* of a tissue or organ *graft* from a genetically unrelated donor, typically  
11 occurring within 10-13 days of *transplantation*.

12  
13 After [2]  
14

### 15 **acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)**

16 Acute lung failure characterized by alveolar and interstitial *edema*, perivascular  
17 pulmonary edema and hyaline membrane formation, resulting from a variety of  
18 underlying diseases that result in increased pulmonary vascular permeability.  
19

### 20 **adaptive immune response**

21 *Immune response* based on the principle of clonal recognition, such that upon first  
22 exposure to an *antigen*, primed *lymphocytes* either differentiate into immune effector  
23 cells or form an expanded pool of *memory cells* that respond to secondary exposure to  
24 the same antigen by mounting an amplified and more rapid response.  
25

26  
27 *Note:* The response may be classified as cellular (*T cell*-mediated) or *humoral*  
28 (*antibody*-dependent).  
29

### 30 **adaptive immune system**

31 Part of the *immune system* responsible for the *adaptive immune response*.  
32  
33

### 34 **Addison disease (autoimmune)**

35 Adrenocortical hypofunction characterized by hypotension, weight loss, anorexia, and  
36 weakness. The most common form is *idiopathic Addison disease*, mediated by  
37 *autoimmune* mechanisms. *Autoantibodies* specific to the adrenal cortex are specific  
38 diagnostic markers of this form.  
39

40 *Note:* 21-Hydroxylase, a cytochrome P450 steroidogenic enzyme, is one of the  
41 major targets of adrenal autoantibodies in idiopathic Addison disease as  
42 well as in Addison disease in the context of autoimmune polyglandular  
43 syndromes (*polyendocrinopathies, autoimmune*). Hypofunction or failure of  
44 the adrenal gland may also be a manifestation of *antiphospholipid*  
45 *syndrome* due to thrombosis of the blood vessels of the adrenal glands.  
46

47 After [1]  
48

### 49 **addressin**

50 Extracellular protein of the venular *endothelium* serving as a *ligand* to a *homing receptor*  
51 for *lymphocytes*.  
52

53 *Note:* Addressins are glycoproteins recognized by *L-selectin*.  
54

### 55 **adenosine deaminase (ADA) deficiency**

56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Lack of the enzyme adenosine deaminase (ADA), which catalyzes the deamination of  
4 adenosine and deoxyadenosine to produce inosine and deoxyinosine, respectively.  
5 Affected individuals have a form of *severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)*.  
6  
7

### 8 **adhesion molecule**

9 Molecule belonging mainly to the *immunoglobulins*, *integrin superfamily* (e.g., LFA-1,  
10 ICAM-1) or *selectins*, expressed on the cell membrane of various cells including those  
11 of the *immune system*. Interaction of adhesion molecules with each other as *receptor*  
12 and corresponding *ligand* facilitates cooperation (cross-talk) of cells, *signal transduction*  
13 and information transfer between cells.  
14

15 After [4]  
16

### 17 **adjuvant**

18 1. In pharmacology, a substance added to a drug to speed or increase the action of the  
19 main component.  
20

21 2. In *immunology*, a substance (such as aluminum hydroxide) or a suspension in oil of a  
22 dead organism (such as fragments of killed *Mycobacterium*) that increases the  
23 response to an *antigen*.  
24

25 After [5]  
26

### 27 **adjuvant arthritis**

28 Experimental model of *immunopathology* with features of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*,  
29 induced in rats by injection with bacterial products, which may be used to study anti-  
30 inflammatory (see *inflammation*) therapies.  
31

### 32 **adoptive transfer**

33 Transfer, by *transplantation* of *immunocompetent* cells, of the capacity to mount an  
34 *immune response*.  
35  
36

### 37 **adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)**

38 See *acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)*.  
39  
40

### 41 **adverse drug reaction**

42 Appreciably harmful or unpleasant reaction resulting from an intervention related to the  
43 administration of a pharmaceutical product.  
44

45 After [6]  
46

### 47 **adverse effect**

48 Change in biochemistry, physiology, growth, development, morphology, behavior, or  
49 lifespan of an organism that results in impairment of functional capacity, impairment of  
50 capacity to compensate for additional stress, or an increase in susceptibility to other  
51 environmental influences.  
52

53 [5]  
54

### 55 **adverse immunostimulation**

56 Referring to *antigen*-non-specific, inappropriate, or unintended activation of a  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 component of the *immune system*.

4 *Note:* The distinction from *pseudoallergy* is subtle.  
5  
6

### 7 **aeroallergen**

8 Any airborne particle, such as a pollen grain or spore, that triggers an *allergic* reaction in  
9 sensitive individuals.  
10

### 11 **affinity**

12 intrinsic affinity

13 Strength of binding (affinity constant) between a *receptor* (e.g., one *antigen*-binding site  
14 on an *antibody*) and a *ligand* (e.g., *epitope* on an antigen).  
15

16 See also *avidity*.

17 [3]  
18  
19

### 20 **affinity chromatography**

21 Use of immobilized *antibody* (or *antigen*) to select specific antigen (or antibody) from a  
22 mixture. The purified *ligand* is then released by disrupting the antibody–antigen  
23 interaction, e.g., by changing the pH.  
24

25 [3]  
26  
27

### 28 **affinity maturation**

29 Increase in *antibody affinity* for an *antigen* observed as the *humoral immune response*  
30 progresses.  
31

### 32 **agammaglobulinemia**

33 See *X-linked agammaglobulinemia*.  
34  
35

### 36 **agglutination**

37 Clumping of particles, such as *erythrocytes* or bacteria, caused by bivalent binding of  
38 *antibodies* to *antigens* on the surfaces of adjacent particles.

39 *Note:* When the particles are erythrocytes, the phenomenon is called  
40 hemagglutination.

41 See also *hemagglutinin*, *prozone effect*.  
42  
43

### 44 **agranulocytosis**

45 Failure of the *bone marrow* to make sufficient *granulocytes*, especially *neutrophils*.

46 *Note:* This is normally identified by a *neutrophil* count  $<0.5 \times 10^9/L$  of blood.  
47  
48

### 49 **allele**

50 One of several alternate forms of a gene that occur at the same relative position (locus)  
51 on homologous chromosomes and which become separated during meiosis and can be  
52 recombined following fusion of gametes.  
53

54 [5]  
55  
56

### 57 **allelic exclusion**

58 Phenomenon whereby, following successful rearrangement of one *allele* of an *antigen*  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *receptor* gene, rearrangement of the other parental allele is suppressed, thereby  
4 ensuring each *lymphocyte* expresses only a single specificity of antigen receptor.

5 *Note:* This does not occur for  $\alpha$  chains in *T lymphocytes*.

6  
7  
8 **allergen**

9 Immunostimulant (see *immunostimulation*) *antigenic* substance that may or may not  
10 cause a clinically significant effect but which is capable of producing an immune  
11 reaction, often *immediate-type hypersensitivity*.

12 After [5]

13 See also *contact allergen*.

14  
15  
16 **allergic**

17 Immunologically hypersensitive.

18 See also *hypersensitivity*.

19  
20  
21 **allergy**

22 Symptoms or signs occurring in sensitized individuals (see *sensitization*) following  
23 exposure to a previously encountered substance (*allergen*) that would otherwise not  
24 cause such symptoms or signs in non-sensitized individuals. The most common forms  
25 of allergy are *rhinitis*, *urticaria*, *asthma*, and *contact dermatitis*.

26 *Note:* Except in the case of *contact allergens*, it is often an *immunoglobulin E (IgE)-*  
27 *mediated hypersensitivity*, e.g., *asthma*, *eczema*, *hay fever* or food allergy.

28  
29  
30  
31 **alloantibody**

32 *Antibody* produced against an *antigen* from another member of the same species.

33 See also *alloantigen*.

34  
35 **alloantigen**

36 *Antigen*, present in some but not all individuals of a particular species, that arises from  
37 polymorphisms at the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* loci and stimulates  
38 intense reactions to *allograft* tissues from other individuals of the same species that do  
39 not produce it.

40 *Note:* The human *ABO blood group* system antigens and *Rhesus (Rh) factor* are  
41 important examples of alloantigens.

42  
43  
44 **allogeneic**

45 allogenic

46 Adjective applied to individuals of the same species that are genetically different.

47 *Note:* In *immunotoxicology* this generally refers to the use of genetically dissimilar  
48 cells to elicit a *cell-mediated immune response* in in vitro assays.

49  
50  
51  
52 **allograft**

53 Tissue or organ *graft* between *allogeneic* individuals.

54 [3]

55  
56  
57 **allotype**

Allelic variant of an *antigen* that, because it is not present in all individuals, may be *immunogenic* in members of the same species that have a different version of the *allele*.  
[3]

**alloreactivity**

Reactivity of an *antibody* with an *alloantigen*.

**alopecia**

Loss of hair, often associated with *autoimmune disease* [e.g., autoimmune thyroid diseases, *pernicious anemia*, *Addison disease*, *diabetes mellitus type 1*, or *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*].

After [1]

**alternative pathway** (of complement activation)

Activation pathway involving *complement* components C3, Factor B, Factor D and *properdin* that, in the presence of a stabilizing activator surface such as microbial polysaccharide, generates the alternative pathway C3 convertase C3bBb.

[3]

See also *classical pathway (of complement activation)*.

**alveolar macrophage**

*Macrophage* found in the lung alveoli; it may remove and sometimes retain inhaled particulate matter.

**alveolitis**

1. Inflammation of alveoli.
2. Inflammation of a tooth socket.

**alveolitis, exogen allergic**

See *atypical interstitial pneumonia*.

**amyloid**

Fibrous protein secreted into the extracellular space where it forms amorphous deposits in multiple organs in some pathological states.

*Note:* Amyloid beta (A $\beta$ ) is found in neuronal plaques in the brain in Alzheimer disease.

**anamnestic**

Literally, "does not forget". Describing *immunological memory* giving rise to a rapid increase in *immunological response* after reexposure to *antigen*.

After [7]

**anaphylactic shock**

Immediate overreaction of the *immune system* to a drug or other agent in an individual who has previously encountered the agent and has produced *antibodies* to that agent.

*Note:* The major manifestation of anaphylactic shock is *angioedema*, which leads

to hypovolemia, obstruction of the airway, and bronchospasm; these in turn may lead to coma or death.

See also *anaphylaxis*.

### **anaphylactoid**

Of or resembling *anaphylaxis*.

### **anaphylatoxin**

*Complement*-derived protein fragment (e.g., C3a, C4a or C5a) capable of directly triggering *mast cell degranulation*, *chemotaxis*, smooth muscle contraction, and *inflammation*.

### **anaphylaxis**

Life-threatening *type I hypersensitivity allergic reaction* (see *allergy*) occurring in a person or animal exposed to an *antigen* or *hapten* to which they have previously been sensitized.

*Note*: Consequences of the reaction may include *angioedema*, vascular collapse, shock (see *anaphylactic shock*), and respiratory distress.

[5]

### **ANCA-associated vasculitis**

See *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody-associated vasculitis*.

### **anemia**

Decrease in the number of *erythrocytes* or total hemoglobin in the blood that results in a decrease in the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood.

### **anergy**

Lack of an *immune response*, usually taken as lack of response to common *recall antigens*.

*Note*: The failure of *B* or *T cells* to proliferate in response to defined *autoantigens* (*clonal anergy*) is a primary mechanism of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

### **angioedema**

angioneurotic edema

Swelling that occurs in the tissue just below the surface of the skin, most often around the lips and eyes, the mucous membranes and occasionally the viscera. It may be genetic, when it is referred to as hereditary angioedema (HAE), but is more usually caused by an *allergic* reaction to either food or medication, and is then called acquired angioedema (AAE).

*Note 1*: Angioedema may take from minutes to hours to develop. Severe angioedema can compromise the airway, and can be life threatening.

*Note 2*: Angioedema is often associated with dermatographism, *urticaria*, *erythema*, and *purpura*. It may sometimes be a sign of a condition such as *leukemia* or *Hodgkin disease*.

1  
2  
3 *Note 3:* Angioedema is similar to *hives*, but *hives* involve itchy red welts on the  
4 surface of the skin, whereas angioedema is a deeper swelling under the  
5 skin.  
6  
7

### 8 **ankylosing spondylitis**

9 Chronic inflammatory disease affecting the spine, sacroiliac joints, and large peripheral  
10 joints, having a major genetic predisposition.

11 After [7]  
12

### 13 **antibody**

14 Protein [*immunoglobulin (Ig)*] produced by the *immune system* in response to exposure  
15 to an *antigenic* molecule and characterized by its specific binding to a site on that  
16 molecule (*antigenic determinant* or *epitope*).  
17

18 [5]  
19

### 20 **antibody, therapeutic**

21 *Antibody* administered with the aim of treating a disease.  
22

### 23 **antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)**

24 antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity

25 *Cytotoxic* reaction in which an *antibody*-coated *target cell* is directly killed by an *Fc*  
26 *receptor*-bearing *leukocyte*, e.g., *NK cell*, *macrophage*, *neutrophil*, or *eosinophil*.  
27

28 After [3]  
29  
30

### 31 **antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay**

32 hemolytic plaque assay

33 Jerne plaque assay

34 plaque-forming cell (PFC) assay

35 Assay that measures the humoral immune response mediated by the concerted actions  
36 of *antigen-presenting cells*, *T lymphocytes*, and *B lymphocytes*, generally by  
37 determination of murine primary *IgM* or *IgG* antibodies directed against the T cell-  
38 dependent sheep red blood cell (SRBC) surface antigens after *in vivo* sensitization.  
39

40 *Note:* Due to involvement of multiple cell populations in mounting an antibody  
41 response, the AFC assay actually evaluates several immune parameters  
42 simultaneously. It is considered to be one of the most sensitive indicator  
43 systems for *immunotoxicology* studies.  
44

45 [8]  
46  
47

### 48 **antibody therapy**

49 Use of an *antibody* to target specific cells (often tumor cells) or *signal transduction*  
50 pathways (often via *chemokines* / *cytokines*) in the treatment of disease.  
51

52 *Note:* The main objectives are stimulation of the patient's *immune system* to attack  
53 malignant tumor cells and the prevention of tumor growth by blockage of  
54 specific cell *receptors*.  
55

### 56 **anticoagulant, lupus**

57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 antibody, lupus

4 *Autoantibody* that binds to phospholipids and (or) proteins of the cell membrane in  
5 *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and can interfere with blood clotting and tests of  
6 clotting function.  
7

### 9 **anti-DNA antibody**

10 *Antibody* directed against single stranded or double stranded DNA.

11 See also *antinuclear antibody (ANA)*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*.  
12

### 14 **anti-erythrocyte antibody**

15 *Antibody* against molecules of the red blood cell, usually against membrane proteins,  
16 causing lysis of the red blood cells.

17 *Note:* Maternal *IgG* antibodies specific for the *Rhesus (Rh) factor blood group*  
18 *antigen* expressed against the *erythrocytes* of the fetus may lead to  
19 hemolytic disease of the newborn.  
20

21 See also *hemolytic anemia*.  
22

### 23 **antigen**

24 Substance or a structural part (*epitope*) of a substance that is recognized by an  
25 *antibody*.  
26

27 *Note:* It often causes the *immune system* to produce a specific *antibody* or specific  
28 cells and combines with a specific binding site (*paratope*) on the antibody or  
29 cells.  
30

31 After [5]  
32

### 33 **antigen-binding groove**

34 See *antigen-presenting groove*.  
35

### 36 **antigenic**

37 Capable of stimulating *lymphocytes* to produce *antibodies*.  
38

### 39 **antigenic determinant**

40 Single *antigenic* site (*epitope*) usually exposed on the surface of a complex *antigen*.  
41

42 [4]  
43

### 44 **antigenicity**

45 Ability of an *antigen* to bind to a specific *antibody* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)*; often a  
46 measure of its ability to produce *immunity*.  
47

### 48 **antigen presentation**

49 Display of *antigen* as peptide fragments bound to *major histocompatibility complex*  
50 (*MHC*) *molecules* on the surface of a cell.  
51

52 *Note:* *T cells* recognize antigen only when it is presented in this way.  
53

54 [7]  
55

### 56 **antigen-presenting cell (APC)**

57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Cell, such as a *dendritic cell* or *macrophage*, that is responsible for making *antigens*  
4 accessible to *lymphocytes* and other immune effector and regulatory cells making  
5 possible specific recognition by *receptors* on the cell surface.

6  
7 *Note:* In a more restricted way, used to describe *major histocompatibility complex*  
8 (*MHC*) *class II*-positive cells (*accessory cells*) that internalise and degrade  
9 an antigen (generally by *phagocytosis*), before a fragment of the antigen  
10 molecule is presented on the APC cell surface in association with an *major*  
11 *histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule*. This complex is recognized by  
12 either *B cells* via surface-bound *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecules, or by *T*  
13 *cells* via the *T-cell receptor (TCR)* for the antigen. Induction of a specific  
14 *immune response* then proceeds.  
15  
16

### 17 **antigen-presenting groove**

- 18  
19 1. Pocket in a *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* that binds *antigen* for  
20 *antigen presentation*.  
21 2. Hydrophobic binding region in the CD1 protein that anchors lipid-containing antigens  
22 causing exposure of the peptide or carbohydrate moiety in a position enabling *T cell*  
23 *receptor (TCR)* contact.  
24  
25

### 26 **antigen processing**

27 Cleavage of protein *antigens* in *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*.

28 *Note:* The *immunogenic* peptides interact with the binding sites of *MHC class II*  
29 products (exogenous antigens) or with those in *MHC class I* products  
30 (endogenous antigens, including viruses). The processed antigen-MHC  
31 complex is recognized by the *antigen receptor* complex of *T lymphocytes*.  
32

33 Modified from [4]

34 See also *antigen presentation*.  
35  
36

### 37 **antigen receptor**

38 Specific *antigen-binding receptor* on *T* or *B lymphocytes* that is transcribed and  
39 translated following rearrangements and translocation of *V*, *D*, and *J genes*.

40 After [7]  
41  
42

### 43 **antigen recognition**

44 Ability of highly specialized proteins of the *immune system* to recognize *antigens* and  
45 specifically bind to them.

46 *Note:* Types of antigen recognition include that by *antibodies*, *T-cell receptors*  
47 (*TCR*), and *Toll-like receptors (TLR)*.  
48  
49

### 50 **anti-idiotypic antibody**

51 *Antibody* raised against *antigenic determinants* unique to the *variable region* of a single  
52 antibody.

53 [2]

54 See also *idiotope*, *idiotypic network*.  
55  
56

### 57 **anti-isotypic antibody**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

*Antibody* against universal features of a given *constant (C) region isotype* (such as  $\gamma$  or  $\mu$ ) of one species that is made by immunizing a member of another species with that isotype.

*Note:* Such antibodies will bind any antibody of that isotype, and are thus useful for detecting bound antibody molecules in *immunoassays* and other applications.

[2]

### **antimitochondrial antibody (AMA)**

*Autoantibody* producing a mitochondrial staining pattern on sections of various tissues and on tumor cell monolayers.

*Note:* According to the fluorescence pattern, different subtypes can be differentiated. Antimitochondrial antibodies of the subtype 2 (AMA-M2) are directed against *antigens* of three related 2-oxo acid dehydrogenase complexes (e.g., the E2 subunit of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex, PDC-E2) localized to the inner mitochondrial membrane. AMA-M2 is a specific marker of *primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)*.

After [1]

### **antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)**

*Antibody* against *antigens* in the cytoplasm of *neutrophils*.

See *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)-associated vasculitis*.

### **antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)-associated vasculitis**

One of a group of *autoimmune systemic vasculitides* associated with *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ANCA)*, e.g., *Wegener granulomatosis (WG)*, *microscopic polyangiitis*, and *Churg-Strauss syndrome*.

[1]

### **antinuclear antibody (ANA)**

antinuclear factor (ANF)

*Antibody*, detectable in the blood, that has the capability of binding to a substance, e.g., DNA, within the nucleus of the cells.

*Note:* ANAs are found in patients whose *immune system* may be predisposed to cause *inflammation* against their own body tissues. ANAs indicate the possible presence of *autoimmunity* and are an indication of *autoimmune disease*, such as *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *scleroderma*, *Sjögren syndrome*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and *mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*.

Modified from [4]

### **antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)**

One of the most common *autoimmune diseases*, characterized by thrombosis, recurrent spontaneous abortions, and the presence of antiphospholipid *antibodies*.

*Note:* Antiphospholipid syndrome may occur as an isolated disease (primary APS) or in combination with another autoimmune disease, especially *systemic*



1  
2  
3  
4 *lupus erythematosus (SLE)* (secondary APS).

5 [1]

6  
7 **antiserum**

8 The *blood serum* from an immune individual that contains *polyclonal antibodies* against  
9 the agent used for *immunization*.

10  
11 **anti-sheep red blood cell IgM response (SRBC) assay**

12 Test to determine *T cell*-dependent *antibody* response, usually by *ELISA*. Sheep red  
13 blood cells (SRBC) are used as an *antigen*. Often referred to as the *plaque assay*.

14 *Note:* A similar test is often performed with the *tetanus toxoid* as the antigen.

15  
16  
17 **antitoxin**

18 *Antibody* specific for *exotoxins* produced by certain microorganisms such as the  
19 causative agents of diphtheria and tetanus.

20 [7]

21  
22 **APECED syndrome**

23 See *polyendocrinopathy, autoimmune*.

24  
25 **aplastic anemia**

26 Greatly decreased formation of *erythrocytes* and hemoglobin, usually associated with  
27 pronounced *granulocytopenia* and *thrombocytopenia*, as a result of hypoplastic or  
28 aplastic *bone marrow*.

29 [9]

30 *Note:* The diagnosis requires *bone marrow* biopsy to demonstrate replacement of  
31 blood cell precursors with fat cells and rule out other causes of  
32 *pancytopenia* such as neoplastic infiltration.

33  
34 **apopto/sis** (n), /**tic** (adj)

35 Active process of programmed cell death, requiring metabolic energy, often  
36 characterized by fragmentation of DNA and cell deletion without associated  
37 *inflammation*.

38 [5]

39  
40 **appendix**

41 *Lymphoid tissue* located at the beginning of the colon.

42 See also *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)*.

43 [7]

44  
45 **arthritis**

46 Inflammation of a joint or joints.

47 See also *rheumatoid srthritis (RA)*.

48  
49 **Arthus reaction**

50 Gell and Coombs Type III reaction

1  
2  
3 Local *antibody*-mediated *hypersensitivity* reaction in which *antigen*-antibody complexes  
4 which fix *complement* are deposited in the walls of small vessels, often in the skin,  
5 causing acute *inflammation* with an infiltration of *neutrophils*.  
6  
7

### 8 **asthma**

9 Chronic respiratory disease characterized by bronchoconstriction, excessive mucus  
10 secretion, and edema of the pulmonary alveoli, resulting in difficulty in exhaling,  
11 wheezing, and cough.  
12

13 [5]  
14

### 15 **ataxia telangiectasia (AT)**

16 Disease characterized by staggering gait, multiple disorganized blood vessels, and an  
17 *immunodeficiency*, associated with a protein called ataxia telangiectasia-mutated  
18 (ATM), a protein kinase thought to be important in detection of double-stranded DNA  
19 breaks.  
20

21 After [7]  
22

### 23 **atopic allergy**

24 *Immunoglobulin E (IgE)*-mediated *hypersensitivity*, including *asthma*, *eczema*, *hay fever*  
25 and food allergy.  
26

27 After [3]  
28

29 See also *atopy*.  
30

### 31 **atopic dermatitis**

32 Inflammation of the skin in *atopic* individuals.  
33

34 *Note:* The term is broader than *atopic eczema*.  
35

36 After [4]  
37

### 38 **atopic eczema**

39 Chronic skin disease, often localized on flexural surfaces, in individuals with propensity  
40 to develop *immunoglobulin E (IgE)*-mediated *allergy*.  
41

42 *Note:* The term describes *eczema* occurring in *atopic* individuals and does not  
43 imply mechanisms.  
44

45 After [4]  
46

### 47 **atop/y (n), /ic (adj)**

48 Of, relating to, or caused by a hereditary predisposition toward developing certain  
49 *hypersensitivity* reactions, such as *hay fever*, *asthma*, or chronic *urticaria*, upon  
50 exposure to specific *antigens*.  
51

### 52 **attenuated vaccine**

53 *Vaccine* made from a live organism that targets cells of the *immune system* but has  
54 been engineered or weakened so as not to cause disease.  
55

56 See also *inactivated vaccine*, *live attenuated vaccine*.  
57

### 58 **atypical interstitial pneumonia**

59  
60

1  
2  
3 Acute or chronic respiratory distress in cattle, in the absence of toxemia or other  
4 *systemic* signs that are characteristic of other pneumonias.

5 *Note 1:* The causes are unknown, but may include *allergic* reactions or toxicity due  
6 to conversion of *tryptophan* to toxic 3-methyl indole by gut flora.

7 *Note 2:* Also called bovine pulmonary emphysema, enzootic bovine adenomatosis,  
8 pulmonary adenomatosis, mold *hypersensitivity*, fog fever, and panthers.  
9

### 10 11 **autoantibody**

12 *Immunoglobulin (Ig) antibody* that is directed against the organism's own *antigen(s)*.

13 After [1]  
14

### 15 16 **autoantigen**

17 *Antigenic* component of an individual's tissues which may be a target of *autoimmune*  
18 responses by autoreactive *B cells (autoantibodies)* or *T cells*, including proteins (e.g.,  
19 enzymes, structural proteins), glycoproteins (e.g., 2-glycoprotein I), nucleic acids, (e.g.,  
20 double-stranded DNA), phospholipids (e.g., *cardiolipin*), and glycosphingolipids (e.g.,  
21 gangliosides).  
22

23 See also *self-tolerance*.

24 After [1]  
25  
26

### 27 **autochthonous**

28 Pertaining to self.  
29

### 30 31 **autocrine**

32 Type of signaling in which a cell secretes a chemical messenger that binds to *receptors*  
33 on the same cell, leading to changes in the cell.

34 See also *paracrine*.  
35

### 36 37 **autograft**

38 Tissue transplant (see *transplantation*) from one site to another in an individual.

39 After [7]  
40

### 41 42 **autoimmune**

43 Of or relating to an *immune response* by the body against one of its own cells or  
44 tissues.  
45

### 46 47 **autoimmune disease**

48 Pathological condition resulting when an organism produces *antibodies* or specific cells  
49 that bind to constituents of its own tissues (*autoantigens*) and cause tissue injury.  
50 Examples of such disease may include *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *myasthenia gravis*,  
51 *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and *scleroderma*.  
52

53 [5]  
54

### 55 56 **autoimmune hemolytic anemia**

57 *Autoimmune disease* in which *antibodies* initiate *complement* lysis of *erythrocytes*.

58 *Note:* Autoimmune hemolytic anemia may be *idiopathic*, secondary to  
59  
60

lymphoproliferative, autoimmune [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*], or chronic inflammatory disorders, postinfectious or drug-induced.

Modified from [1]

### **autoimmune hepatitis (AIH)**

Chronic *autoimmune*-mediated hepatic *inflammation* usually characterized by *antinuclear (ANA)*, smooth muscle (SMA)/anti-F-actin, *liver-kidney microsomal (LKM)*, and (or) soluble liver antigen (SLA) antibodies.

After [1]

### **autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS)**

Canale-Smith syndrome

Disease characterized by *lymphadenopathy*, hepatosplenomegaly, *autoimmune cytopenias*, and *hypergammaglobulinemia*.

After [1]

### **autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome (APS) type 1 or 2**

Heterogeneous group of rare diseases characterised by *autoimmune* activity against more than one endocrine organ, although non-endocrine organs can also be affected.

*Note 1:* Autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome, type 1 is known as the *candidiasis-hypoparathyroidism-Addison disease* syndrome after its main features:

a) A mild immune deficiency, leading to persistent *mucosal* and cutaneous infections with *Candida* yeasts. There is also decreased function of the *spleen* (asplenism).

b) Autoimmune dysfunction of the parathyroid gland (leading to hypocalcemia) and the adrenal gland (Addison disease).

*Note 2:* Autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome, type 2 (also known as Schmidt syndrome) is more heterogeneous, occurs more often and has not been linked to one gene. Features of this syndrome are Addison disease, hypothyroidism (*Hashimoto thyroiditis*), and *diabetes mellitus type 1*. Patients are at a higher risk when they carry a particular *human leukocyte antigen (HLA)* genotype (e.g., DQ2, DQ8 and DRB1\*0404).

### **autoimmune regulator (AIRE)**

DNA-binding protein involved in immunoregulation (probably in the establishment and maintenance of *tolerance*).

[1]

### **autoimmunity**

*Immune response* to "self" tissues or components.

*Note:* Such an immune response may have pathological consequences leading to *autoimmune diseases*.

See also *autoantigen*, *self-antigen*.

### **autoinflammatory disease**

1  
2  
3 Unregulated *inflammation* without significant levels of *autoantibodies* or autoactivated *T*  
4 *cells*, or evidence of infection, but rather caused by genetic disturbance of the  
5 mechanisms that initiate and control inflammation.  
6  
7

### 8 **autologous**

9 From the same individual.  
10

### 11 **autologous antibody**

12 *Antibody* derived from a specific individual, acting within that individual.

13 See also *heterologous antibody*.  
14  
15

### 16 **autophag/y (n) /ic (adj)**

17 Digestion and breakdown in *lysosomes* of a cell's own proteins and (or) organelles.

18 *Note:* It may be one route by which proteins can be processed for *antigen*  
19 *presentation*.  
20

21 See also *heterophagy*, *macroautophagy*, *microautophagy*, *mitophagy*, *pexophagy*.  
22  
23

### 24 **autoreactivity**

25 *Immune response* directed at *self-antigens*.  
26  
27

### 28 **avidity**

29 functional affinity

30 Binding strength between two molecules (e.g., *antibody* and *antigen*) taking into account  
31 the valency of the interaction. Thus the avidity will always be equal to or greater than  
32 the *affinity*.  
33

34 [3]  
35

### 36 **$\beta_2$ -microglobulin**

37 Small (12 kDa) protein forming part of the structure of *major histocompatibility complex*  
38 (*MHC*) *class I*-encoded molecules.

39 *Note:* The presence of  $\beta_2$ -microglobulin in urine is a common indicator of renal  
40 tubular dysfunction.  
41  
42

### 43 **B-1/B-2 cells**

44 B-1/B-2 lymphocytes

45 Two major subpopulations of *B lymphocytes*.

46 *Note 1:* The majority of *B cells* are B-2 which express low levels of surface IgM,  
47 higher levels of surface IgD, do not express CD5, and are CD43 -, CD23 + ;  
48 they are directly generated from precursors in the *bone marrow*, and  
49 secrete highly specific antibody.  
50

51 *Note 2:* B-1 cells bear high levels of surface *immunoglobulin M (IgM)*, show lower  
52 levels of surface *immunoglobulin D (IgD)*, are CD43 +/CD23 -, and most  
53 express the cell surface *antigen* CD5. They are self-renewing, and  
54 frequently secrete high levels of *antibody* that binds to a range of antigens  
55 ('polyspecificity') with a relatively low *affinity*.  
56

57 After [3]  
58  
59  
60

**B7 molecule**

Costimulatory molecule (see *costimulation*) on the surface of *T cell-activating antigen-presenting cells (APC)*, allowing full *activation* of T cells that are bound to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*-peptide complexes.

*Note:* Whereas binding of B7 molecules to CD28 is stimulatory, binding to *cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4)* decreases T cell activity and participates in *tolerance*.

**B cell**

See *B lymphocyte*.

**B-cell linker protein (BLNK)**

Adaptor protein operating in *B cells* that, upon phosphorylation, recruits signaling molecules to membrane *lipid rafts*.

**B-cell stimulatory factor (BSF)**

Generic name given to *B cell*-specific growth and differentiation factors involved in the *T cell*-dependent *activation* of B cells. Many are now identified as specific *interleukins (IL)*.

**B-cell receptor (BCR)**

Receptor on the surface of a *B cell* consisting of transmembrane *immunoglobulin (Ig)* that recognizes a specific *antigen*.

**B lymphocyte**

B cell

*Bone marrow*-derived *lymphocyte*, expressing an *antigen-receptor* complex composed of membrane-bound *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and associated molecular chains.

*Note:* *B-cell receptors (BCR)* interact with *epitopes* directly [no *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* restriction]. Mature activated B lymphocytes (*plasma cells*) produce *antibody* and are efficient *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*.

After [4]

**B-lymphocyte chemokine (CXCL13)**

*Chemokine* that attracts *B cells* and activated *T cells* into the follicles of peripheral *lymphoid tissues*.

After [2]

**B-lymphocyte-induced maturation protein 1 (BLIMP-1)**

Transcriptional repressor in *B cells*, that switches off genes required for B cell proliferation in the *germinal center*, and for *class switching* and *affinity maturation*.

*Note:* B cells in which BLIMP-1 is induced, become *plasma cells*.

[2]

**bacille Calmette–Guérin (BCG)**

Attenuated *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* used both as a specific *vaccine* for tuberculosis and as an *adjuvant*.

[3]

*Note:* Also used as an *immunostimulant* in cancer therapy (e.g., in bladder cancer).

**BALB/c mouse**

Inbred albino mouse strain, substrains of which produce *plasmacytomas* on injection with mineral oil, useful for the production of *monoclonal antibodies*.

**bare lymphocyte syndrome (BLS)**

Rare, recessive genetic condition in which the products of one or more genes required to switch on *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* or *MHC class II* genes are defective or absent. As a consequence, MHC class I (BLS1) or MHC class II (BLS2) genes are not expressed, leading to severe *immunodeficiency*.

**basophil**

Type of *granulocyte* found in the blood and resembling the tissue *mast cell*.

[3]

**basophilic degranulation**

Loss of granules in basophilic cells (see *basophil*), associated with the release of active substances from the cells, characteristic of *type I immediate hypersensitivity*.

**Bcl-2**

Member of the Bcl protein family that protects cells from *apoptosis* by binding to the mitochondrial membrane.

*Note:* It is encoded by the bcl-2 gene, which was discovered at the breakpoint of an oncogenic chromosomal translocation in *B-cell leukemia*.

After [2]

**BCR-ABL**

See *ABL oncogene*.

**Behcet disease**

Chronic *vasculitis* of unknown origin, characterized by ulcerations and skin rash and treated by *immunosuppression*.

**Bence-Jones protein**

Excess circulating *kappa* ( $\kappa$ )-*light chain* found in the urine of patients with *multiple myeloma*.

**benign monoclonal gammopathy**

Nonmalignant overproduction of  $\gamma$  *globulin* by a single *clone* of *lymphocytes*.

**biolistics**

1  
2  
3 Use of small particles, e.g., colloidal gold, as a vehicle for carrying agents (drugs,  
4 nucleic acid, etc.) into a cell.

5  
6 *Note:* Following coating with the desired agent(s), the particles are fired into the  
7 dermis of the recipient using a helium-powered gun.

8 [3]  
9

### 10 **biopanning**

11 Technique for selection of peptides with high *affinity* binding to a chosen target.  
12

### 13 **bispecific antibody**

14 Artificially produced hybrid *antibody* in which each of the two *antigen*-binding arms is  
15 specific for a different antigenic *epitope*. Such antibodies, which can be produced either  
16 by chemical cross-linkage or by recombinant DNA techniques, can be used to link  
17 together two different antigens or cells, e.g., a *cytotoxic T lymphocyte* and a tumor cell.  
18

19 [3]  
20  
21

### 22 **blast**

23 Immature stage in cell development, before the appearance of the definitive  
24 characteristics of the cell; used also as a word termination, as in erythroblast, etc.  
25

### 26 **blastogenesis assay**

27 See *lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)*.  
28  
29

### 30 **Blau syndrome**

31 Rare familial inflammatory disease characterized by *arthritis*, *dermatitis* and *uveitis*.  
32  
33

### 34 **blocking antibody**

35 *Antibody* that prevents other antibodies from combining with a specific *antigen* but does  
36 not itself produce an *immunological response* when combined with that antigen.  
37  
38

### 39 **blood-brain barrier**

40 Physiological interface between brain tissues and circulating blood created by a  
41 mechanism that alters the permeability of brain capillaries, so that some substances are  
42 prevented from entering brain tissue, while other substances are allowed to enter freely.  
43

44 *Note:* The blood-brain barrier normally keeps cells of the *immune system* outside  
45 the brain.

46 After [5]  
47

### 48 **blood dyscrasia**

49 Presence of abnormal material in the blood, usually applied to diseases affecting blood  
50 cells or *platelets*.  
51

52 [9]  
53

### 54 **blood group**

55 blood type

56 Any of the various types of blood whose characteristic *erythrocyte surface antigens*  
57  
58  
59  
60



determine compatibility in *transfusion*.

See also *ABO blood group*.

### **blood group antigen**

Surface *antigen* on *erythrocytes*, detectable with a specific *antibody* from other individuals.

*Note:* The major blood group antigens ABO and Rh (Rhesus) are used in routine blood banking to type blood, but there are many other blood group antigens that can also be detected in *cross-matching*.

See also *ABO blood group system*, *blood group*, *Rhesus (Rh) factor*.

### **blood-placenta barrier**

Physiological interface between maternal and fetal blood circulations that filters out some substances that could harm the fetus while favoring the passage of others such as nutrients.

*Note 1:* Many fat-soluble substances such as alcohol are not filtered out, and several types of virus can also cross this barrier.

*Note 2:* The effectiveness of the interface as a barrier varies with species and different forms of placentation.

*Note 3:* *Immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies* are specifically transported across the barrier and reach the same levels in the newborn, as in the mother.

After [5]

### **blood plasma**

See *plasma*.

### **blood serum**

See *serum*.

### **Bloom syndrome**

Disease caused by mutations in a DNA helicase and characterized by low *T cell* numbers, reduced *antibody* levels, and an increased susceptibility to respiratory infections, cancer, and radiation damage.

After [2]

### **bone marrow**

See *marrow*, *bone*.

### **bone marrow transplantation**

Transfer of *bone marrow* from a donor to a recipient whose bone marrow has been ablated.

*Note 1:* Bone marrow transplantation is used to treat both non-neoplastic and neoplastic conditions not amenable to other forms of therapy.

*Note 2:* It has been used especially in cases of *aplastic anemia*, *acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia (ALL)*, and *acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)*.

**booster**

Portion of an immunizing agent (see *immunization*) given at a later time to stimulate the effects of a previous dose of the same agent.

**bradykinin**

Vasoactive peptide and inflammatory mediator (see *inflammation*) produced at sites of tissue damage.

**bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT)**

See *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)*.

**bronchial provocation test**

Test of alteration of lung function induced by inhalation of an *allergen* or airway-constricting agent, providing information on bronchial responsiveness.

**Bruton agammaglobulinemia**

See *X-linked agammaglobulinemia*.

**Buehler assay (BA)**

Buehler test

*Skin sensitization test* for *contact allergic dermatitis* in which a test substance is applied to the shaved flank of a Guinea pig in an occlusive patch for 6 h at 0, 1, and 2 weeks, followed by *challenge* of the untreated flank at 4 weeks.

**bullous skin disease, autoimmune**

Any of several *autoimmune diseases* characterized by intraepidermal or subepidermal blisters (e.g., *pemphigus vulgaris*, bullous pemphigoid) and highly specific *autoantibodies* against components of the desmosome or hemidesmosome (e.g., desmoglein 3, BP180).

After [1]

**Burkitt lymphoma**

*Lymphoma* caused by *Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)*, occurring mainly in sub-Saharan Africa.

**bursa of Fabricius**

Primary *lymphoid* organ in avian species, located at the cloacal-hind gut junction; it is the site of *B cell maturation*.

[3]

**bystander effect** (in immunology)

Positive or negative effect on the *immune system* seen after exposure to certain drugs, radiation, and other agents, induced by non-immune mechanisms.

See also *bystander suppression*.

**bystander suppression**

1  
2  
3 *Suppression of an immune response to an antigen due to tolerance to an unrelated*  
4 *(hence bystander) antigen.*

5 See also *bystander effect*.

6  
7  
8 **C1 esterase inhibitor**

9 See *C1 inhibitor*.

10  
11 **C1 inhibitor**

12 C1 esterase inhibitor

13 *Plasma glycoprotein secreted primarily by the liver and acting as a serine proteinase*  
14 *inhibitor (serpin), inhibiting C1 components of the complement system.*

15 *Note 1: It also inhibits coagulation factors XI and XII and kallikrein.*

16 *Note 2: Patients with C1 inhibitor deficiency may manifest systemic lupus*  
17 *erythematosus (SLE), glomerulonephritis, or pyogenic infections.*

18 See also *hereditary angioneurotic edema*.

19  
20  
21  
22 **CC chemokine**

23 See *chemokine*.

24  
25  
26 **CD1**

27 Cell surface protein of *antigen-presenting cells (APC)* involved in presentation of  
28 lipopeptide or glycolipid *antigens*.

29 See also *antigen-presenting groove*.

30  
31  
32 **CD3**

33 Molecule composed of five polypeptide chains associated with the heterodimer *T-cell*  
34 *receptor (TCR)*, forming the T-cell receptor complex (TCR/CD3); CD3 transduces the  
35 activating signals when *antigen* binds to the TCR.

36 [1]

37  
38  
39 **CD4**

40 Cell surface *antigen* belonging to the *immunoglobulin (Ig) superfamily* of molecules and  
41 a marker of *T helper cells*.

42 *Note: As an adhesion molecule, it interacts with the non-polymorphic part of major*  
43 *histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II gene product.*

44 [1]

45  
46  
47 **CD4+/CD25+ T cell**

48 Subtype of *CD4+ regulatory T cell (Treg)* with potential role in the regulation of *immune*  
49 *homeostasis*.

50 *Note 1: These cells seem to be important in preventing the development of*  
51 *autoimmune diseases (depletion leads to the spontaneous development of*  
52 *various autoimmune diseases in genetically susceptible animals; transfer*  
53 *prevents the development of organ-specific autoimmunity).*

54 After [1]

55 *Note 2: Activated (see activation) T cells may also have this phenotype. Treg cells*  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

may be further distinguished by positivity for a protein marker *Foxp3*.

### **CD5+ B lymphocyte**

*Lymphocyte* of type B-1a, which is predominant in fetal *lymphoid* organs and in *neonatal* cord blood.

*Note 1:* In adults, these cells range from 2% to 6% of total mononuclear cells in peripheral blood. They utilize an *immunoglobulin (Ig) variable (V) gene* repertoire different from that of CD5- *B cells* and they produce *natural autoantibodies*.

*Note 2:* The expansion of autoreactive B1-a cells has been reported in peripheral blood of patients with autoimmune diseases [e.g., *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *Sjögren syndrome*, *antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)*]. In RA these cells can account for up to 60% of circulating B cells and may produce *rheumatoid factor*.

After [1]

### **CD8**

Cell surface molecule belonging to the *immunoglobulin (Ig) superfamily* of molecules found, among others, on *cytotoxic T cells*, which binds to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*.

After [1]

### **CD8+ T suppressor cell**

Outdated term for CD8+ *cytotoxic T lymphocyte* (CTL, Tc) The term “*suppressor T cell*” is nowadays reserved for *regulatory T cell (Treg)*.

### **CD16**

Low-affinity *Fc-γ receptor* (Fc-γ-RIII) expressed mainly on *natural killer (NK) cells*, *granulocytes* and *macrophages*, mediating *antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)*.

[4]

### **CD23**

Low-affinity *Fc-ε receptor* induced by *interleukin-4* (IL-4) and expressed on activated *B cells* (see *lymphocyte activation*) and *macrophages*.

[4]

### **CD25**

α-chain of the *interleukin-2* (IL-2) receptor.

[1]

### **CD40 ligand (CD40L)**

Essential molecule for normal switching signaling through binding to CD40 on *B cells*. The interaction of CD40L and CD40 is also critical for optimal *T cell* function. See *hyper immunoglobulin M (IgM) syndrome*.

[1]

**CD45**

See *leukocyte common antigen (LCA)*.

**C domain**

See *constant (C) region*.

**C gene**

See *constant (C) gene*.

**C-reactive protein (CRP)**

Serum protein produced by liver cells as part of the *acute-phase response*, which acts as a stimulus of the *classical pathway of complement activation*.

*Note:* CRP binds to the phosphorylcholine component of the C-polysaccharide, a component of the surface of many bacteria and fungi, resulting in *opsonization* for enhanced *phagocytosis*.

**C region**

See *constant (C) region*.

**C-type lectin**

Any of a large family of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent *lectins*; members of this family share primary structural homology in their carbohydrate-recognition domains and include many endocytic *receptors*, many proteoglycans, and all known *collectins* and *selectins*.

*Note:* The C-type lectins are involved in many *immune system* functions, such as *inflammation* and *immunity* to tumor and virally infected cells, whereas the *collectins* are involved in *innate immunity*.

After [10]

**CXC chemokine**

See *chemokine*.

**CX<sub>3</sub>C chemokine**

See *chemokine*.

**cadherin**

Calcium-dependent, transmembrane glycoprotein occurring in cell-cell contacts (desmosomes) and functioning as an *adhesion molecule*.

*Note:* Cadherins may mediate *lymphocyte homing* and are also important elements in cellular *signal transduction*.

**calcineurin inhibitor**

Any member of a group of immunomodulating (see *immunomodulation*) drugs that bind to the cytosolic protein cyclophilin of *T lymphocytes*, thus inhibiting the phosphatase calcineurin, an inducer of *interleukin-2* (IL-2) formation.

*Note:* Calcineurin inhibitors include potent immunomodulating drugs, such as

1  
2  
3 cyclosporin, tacrolimus, pimecrolimus, and voclosporin (see Annex II).  
4

5  
6 **Canale-Smith syndrome**

7 See *autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS)*.  
8

9 **candidiasis**

10 candidosis

11 moniliasis

12 Infection with a fungus of the genus *Candida*, especially *C. albicans*, that usually occurs  
13 in the skin and mucous membranes of the mouth, respiratory tract, or vagina but may  
14 invade the bloodstream, especially in *immunocompromised* individuals.

15 See also *thrush*.

16 [11]  
17  
18  
19

20 **capping**

21 Active process whereby cross-linking of cell surface molecules (e.g., by *antibody*) leads  
22 to aggregation and subsequent migration of the molecules to one pole of the cell.

23 [3]  
24  
25

26 **carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)**

27 Membrane glycoprotein *epitope* normally present in the fetal gastrointestinal tract and  
28 elevated in many patients with various carcinomas.

29 After [7]  
30  
31

32 **cardiolipin**

33 1,3-Bis(*sn*-3'-phosphatidyl)-*sn*-glycerol, the main target of antiphospholipid *antibodies*.

34 See also *antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)*.  
35  
36

37 **carrier** (in immunology)

38 Any molecule that, when conjugated to a non-*immunogenic* molecule (e.g., a *hapten*),  
39 makes the latter immunogenic by providing *epitopes* for *helper T lymphocytes (Th)* that  
40 the hapten lacks.

41 [3]  
42  
43

44 **caspase**

45 Any member of a family of intracellular cysteine proteinases that cleave proteins at  
46 specific aspartic acid residues to initiate or promote *apoptosis*.  
47

48 **caveola**

49 Invagination on the cell surface (plasma membrane), enriched in caveolin proteins,  
50 cholesterol, and glycosphingolipids, important in various processes including  
51 *pinocytosis* and *signal transduction*. A type of *lipid raft*.  
52  
53

54 **celiac disease**

55 [gluten enteropathy](#)

56 [non-tropical sprue](#)  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *Autoimmune* disorder occurring in genetically predisposed individuals, characterised by  
4 *immune intolerance* to the  $\alpha$ -gliadin component of gluten, a protein found in wheat,  
5 barley, and rye. Resultant *inflammation* of the *mucosa* of the upper small intestine is  
6 associated with malabsorption of nutrients and a wasting illness follows from this.  
7  
8

9 **cell-mediated cytotoxicity**

10 Lysis of a *target cell* initiated by a *T-lymphocyte* binding to surface *antibodies* or  
11 *antigen-bound major histocompatibility complex molecules*.  
12

13 **cell-mediated immune response**

14 Specific *immune response* in which *T lymphocytes* mediate the effects, either through  
15 the release of *cytokines* or through *cytotoxicity*.  
16

17 [4]  
18

19 **cell-mediated immunity (CMI)**

20 *Immune response* mediated by *antigen-specific T lymphocytes*, either through the  
21 release of *cytokines* or through *cytotoxicity*, in contrast with *humoral immunity*, which is  
22 *antibody-mediated*.  
23

24 *Note:* Cell-mediated immunity may be expressed as immune regulatory activity  
25 (primarily mediated by *CD4+ helper T lymphocytes (Th)*, possibly important  
26 in preventing *autoimmune diseases*) or immune effector activity (mediated  
27 largely by *CD8+ cytotoxic T cells*).  
28

29 See also *immune regulation*.  
30

31 **cell-mediated response**

32 See *cell-mediated immune response*.  
33

34 **cellular immunity**

35 See *cell-mediated immunity (CMI)*.  
36  
37

38 **central tolerance**

39 Specific immunological *tolerance* due to the induction of *lymphocyte apoptosis* or  
40 *anergy* within the primary *lymphoid organs* (*bone marrow* in the case of *B cell* tolerance  
41 and the *thymus* for *T cells*).  
42

43 [3]  
44

45 **challenge** (in immunology)

46 Induction or evaluation of an *immune response* in an organism by administration of a  
47 specific *antigen* to which it has been sensitized.  
48  
49

50 **chaperone-mediated autophagy (CMA)**

51 Type of *autophagy* targeting only those proteins that are recognized by the binding of an  
52 hsc70-containing chaperone / co-chaperone complex.  
53  
54

55 **chemokine**

56 Any of a large family of small proteins, produced by many types of cells, that attract and  
57 guide *lymphocytes* to sites of infection and *inflammation* or to other sites, such as those  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 associated with lymphocyte development and with migration into *lymph nodes*.

4  
5 *Note 1:* Chemokines fall into two main categories: CC chemokines ( $\beta$ -chemokines)  
6 have two cysteine (C) residues near the amino terminus of the protein,  
7 whereas in CXC chemokines ( $\alpha$ -chemokines) the two cysteines are  
8 separated by a single variable amino acid (X). There are two other groups  
9 of chemokines – C chemokines ( $\gamma$ -chemokines) that have two cysteines,  
10 one N-terminal cysteine and one cysteine downstream; and CX<sub>3</sub>C  
11 chemokines (or  $\delta$ -chemokines) that have three amino acids between the  
12 two cysteines.

13  
14 *Note 2:* Chemokines act in conjunction with other factors, such as *tumor necrosis*  
15 *factor (TNF- $\alpha$ )*, to induce the *adhesion* factors that attach lymphocytes to  
16 the blood vessel wall before they move through it into the tissues.  
17  
18  
19

### 20 **chemotactic factor**

21 Biologically active substance, such as a *chemokine* or *anaphylatoxin*, that induces a  
22 concentration gradient-dependent movement of cells.

23 See also *chemotaxis*.  
24  
25

### 26 **chemotaxis**

27 1. General. Movement of an organism or cell along a concentration gradient of a  
28 chemical.

29 2. In immunology. Movement of cells up a concentration gradient of a chemical  
30 attractant (*chemotactic factor*), such as a *chemokine* or other *cytokine*.

31 [3]  
32  
33

### 34 **chemotype**

35 chemovar

36 Character of a plant or microorganism based on a metabolite distinct from that found in  
37 other members of the same species.  
38  
39

### 40 **chimeric**

41 Composite of genetically distinct individuals, e.g., following an *allogeneic bone marrow*  
42 *graft*.

43 [3]  
44  
45

### 46 **chloracne**

47 Acne-like eruption caused by exposure to certain chlorinated organic substances such  
48 as polychlorinated biphenyls or 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin [2,3,7,8-  
49 tetrachlorooxanthrene] and other polychlorinated dibenzodioxins and furans.

50 [5]  
51

52 *Note:* The lesions are most frequently found on the cheeks, behind the ears, in the  
53 armpits and groin region.  
54

### 55 **chromate uptake assay**

56  
57  
58  
59  
60



Method used in *immunotoxicology* to quantify the toxic effect of a substance on *leukocytes* by measuring uptake of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ -labeled chromate.

### chromium release assay

$^{51}\text{Cr}$  release assay

*Immunotoxicity* assay that can be used to assess either *natural killer (NK) cell* or *cytotoxic T cell* activity or *macrophage* activity. When incubated with  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ -labeled chicken red blood cells (cRBC), NK and cytotoxic T cells lyse the cRBC and thus induce the release of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  into the medium. In contrast, macrophages phagocytose cRBC, and are then lysed to assess the amount of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  they have taken up.

*Note:* The assay is usually applied to measure parameters of innate immunity. See also *chromate uptake assay*.

### chronic allergic inflammation

Disease of airways, skin, eyes and other organs, resulting from repeated or continuous exposure to an *allergen* and involving *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* formation, IgE-induced *histamine*-release from *mast cells*, liberation of mediators such as *cytokines* and *prostaglandins*, and local *inflammation* characterized by infiltrating *leucocytes*; it results in augmented susceptibility to the allergen.

### chronic graft rejection

See *chronic rejection*.

### chronic granulomatous disease

*Immunodeficiency* disease in which multiple *granulomas* form as a result of defective elimination of bacteria by *phagocytes*.

*Note:* It is caused by deficiency of the *NADPH oxidase* system of enzymes that generates superoxide involved in bacterial killing.

After [2]

### chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)

*B cell* tumor found in the blood.

*Note:* The great majority of these tumors express *CD5* and unmutated *variable (V) genes* and are therefore thought to arise from *B-1 cells*.

After [2]

### chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis

See *Hashimoto thyroiditis*.

### chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)

Cancer characterized by overgrowth of the *bone marrow* with malignant white blood cells, usually exhibiting a chromosomal abnormality (Philadelphia chromosome), which causes uncontrolled proliferation of cells that are released into peripheral blood.

### chronic rejection

1  
2  
3 Immunologically triggered reaction occurring in a transplanted organ or tissue, leading  
4 to progressive destruction and finally failure of the transplanted organ occurring two  
5 months to many years after *transplantation*.

6  
7 *Note:* In contrast, hyperacute rejection caused by preformed *antibodies* starts  
8 within minutes after organ transplantation, and acute rejection occurs within  
9 2-60 days.

### 11 **class I MHC gene product**

12 See *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule*.

### 14 **class II MHC gene product**

15 See *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecule*.

### 17 **class switching**

18 Process by which a *B cell* changes the class but not specificity of a given *antibody* it  
19 produces, e.g., switching from an *immunoglobulin M (IgM)* to an *immunoglobulin G*  
20 (*IgG*) antibody.

21 [3]

### 23 **classical pathway** (of complement activation)

24 Activation pathway involving *complement* components C1, C2 and C4 which, following  
25 fixation of C1q, e.g., by *antigen-antibody* complexes, produces the *classical pathway* C3  
26 convertase C4b2a.

27 [3]

28 See also *alternative pathway (of complement activation)*.

### 30 **clonal anergy**

31 Form of *self-tolerance* developing as a consequence of negative selection during *thymic*  
32 selection processes. *Clones* of *thymocytes* whose antigen receptors [*T cell receptors*  
33 (*TCR*)] bind with high *affinity* to *self-antigens* in association with *major histocompatibility*  
34 *complex (MHC) molecules* are inactivated.

35 [4]

### 37 **clonal deletion**

38 Process by which contact with *antigen* (e.g., self-antigen) at an early stage of  
39 *lymphocyte* differentiation leads to cell death by *apoptosis*.

40 [3]

### 42 **clonal expansion**

43 Proliferation of *B lymphocytes* and *T lymphocytes* activated by *clonal selection* in order  
44 to produce a *clone* of identical cells.

45 *Note:* Clonal expansion enables the body to have sufficient numbers of *antigen-*  
46 *specific lymphocytes* to mount an effective *immune response*.

### 48 **clonal indifference (ignorance)**

49 Failure of *B* or *T cells* expressing anti-self-receptors to interact with *antigen* (e.g., by low  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 valency, low concentration, or sequestration of antigens; low receptor *avidity*; or lack of  
4 costimulatory molecules).

5  
6 *Note:* This is the primary mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of  
7 *self-tolerance*.

8 After [1]

9  
10 **clonal selection**

11 Selection and *activation* by *antigen* of a *lymphocyte*, bearing a complementary *receptor*,  
12 which then proliferates to form an expanded *clone*.

13 [3]

14  
15 **clone**

- 16  
17 1. (n) Population of genetically identical cells or organisms having a common ancestor.  
18 2. (vb) To produce such a population.  
19 3. (n) Recombinant DNA molecules all carrying the same inserted sequence.

20 [5]

21  
22 **cluster determinant (CD)**

23 Cluster of *antigens* representing a cell surface marker with which *antibodies* react.  
24 Not to be confused with *cluster of differentiation (CD) antigen*.

25  
26 **cluster of differentiation (CD) antigen**

27 Any of a family of molecular markers on cell surfaces that may be used operationally to  
28 define phenotype, origin, and *activation* state of the cell.

29  
30 *Note:* The CD antigens expressed by a *T cell* vary with its stage of development  
31 and thus with its role in the *immune response*.

32 After [1]

33  
34 **coagulation system**

35 Proteolytic cascade of *plasma* enzymes that triggers blood clotting when blood vessels  
36 are damaged.

37 After [2]

38  
39 **cognate T cell**

40 *Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* primed by the same *antigen* as the *B cell* to which it gives  
41 help.

42 After [2]

43  
44 **cold autoantibody type**

45 *Autoantibody* that reacts optimally at low temperatures (0–5°C) with surface *antigens* of  
46 *erythrocytes*.

47  
48 *Note:* It mediates *autoimmune hemolytic anemia* by either *cold agglutinins* (cold  
49 hemagglutinin disease) or *cold hemolysins* (paroxysmal cold  
50 hemoglobinuria).

51 After [1]

**collagen arthritis**

*Autoimmune* model of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, arising from combined *cellular immunity* and *humoral immunity* against collagen type II, and characterized by rapid and severe erosions of cartilage and bone.

After [12]

**collectin**

Any member of a structurally related family of calcium-dependent carbohydrate-binding proteins or *lectins* containing collagen-like sequences, e.g., *mannose-binding lectin (MBL)*.

After [2]

See also *C-type lectin*.

**colony stimulating factor (CSF)**

Factor that permits the proliferation and differentiation of *hematopoietic* cells.

[3]

**combinatorial diversity**

Component of *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* diversity that is generated by the recombination of *variable (V)*, *diversity (D)*, for *immunoglobulin heavy chains*, and for TCR  $\beta$  and  $\delta$  chains), and *joining (J)* gene segments.

[3]

See also *V(D)J recombination*.

**combinatorial joining**

Merging of DNA segments generating new genetic information.

**combined immunodeficiency**

See *X-linked severe combined immune deficiency*.

**common variable immunodeficiency**

Relatively common deficiency in *antibody* production, of unknown pathogenesis but strongly associated with genes mapping within the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*.

Modified from [2]

*Note 1:* Characterized by reduced  $\gamma$  *globulin* levels, generally affecting all the *antibody* classes, but sometimes only *immunoglobulin G (IgG)*.

*Note 2:* Most patients have normal or near-normal numbers of *B-cells*, which however do not differentiate into *plasma cells*.

**competitive inhibition assay**

Method of measuring an *antigen* in a sample using a labeled species of the antigen as a competitive inhibitor of its binding in a specific *antigen-antibody reaction*.

**complement**

Group of approximately 20 *serum* proteinase precursors, some of which act in an

1  
2  
3 enzymatic cascade, producing effector molecules involved in *inflammation* (proteins  
4 C3a, C5a), *phagocytosis* (*opsonization*) (C3b), and cell lysis (C5b, C6–C9).

5 After [3]

6 See also *complement system*.

### 9 **complementarity determining region (CDR)**

10 *Hypervariable* amino acid sequence within *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable*  
11 (*V*) *regions*, which interacts with complementary amino acids on the antigen or *major*  
12 *histocompatibility complex (MHC)* – peptide complex.

13 After [3]

### 16 **complement deficiency**

17 Congenital deficiency in any of the various components of the *complement system*.

18 *Note:* Rheumatic disorders [mainly *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*] are  
19 associated with deficiencies of the early components of the *classical*  
20 *pathway*. More than 30% of individuals with C2 deficiency and nearly 80%  
21 with either C3 or C4 deficiency have an *autoimmune* manifestation.

### 24 **complement reaction**

25 Physiological reaction to the presence of a foreign microorganism in which a cascade of  
26 enzymatic reactions, triggered by molecular features of the microorganism, result in  
27 lysis or *phagocytosis* of the foreign material.

### 30 **complement receptor (CR)**

31 Cell-surface protein that recognizes and binds *complement* proteins that have bound an  
32 *antigen*.

33 *Note:* Complement receptors on *phagocytes* allow them to identify pathogens  
34 coated with complement proteins for uptake and destruction. Complement  
35 receptors include CR1, CR2, CR3, CR4, and the receptor for C1q.

36 After [2]

### 39 **complement system**

40 Group of *serum* proteins with the capacity to interact with each other when activated in  
41 a chain reaction which results in formation of a lytic complex and the release of several  
42 biologically active peptides of low relative molecular mass (*anaphylatoxins*).

43 *Note:* The system can be activated by *antigen-antibody complexes (classical*  
44 *pathway)* and by other components, e.g., bacteria (*alternative pathway*). As  
45 an effector mechanism of the *humoral immune response*, the activated  
46 complement system facilitates *opsonization*, *phagocytosis* and lysis of  
47 cellular *antigens*.

48 After [4]

### 52 **concanavalin A (conA)**

53 *Hemagglutinin*, isolated from jack bean (*Canavalia ensiformis*) meal, which reacts with  
54 polyglucosans in the blood of mammals, causing *agglutination*.

55 *Note:* Concanavalin A has been used to activate *T cells* in vitro.

**conformational epitope**

*Epitope* on a protein *antigen* formed from several separate regions in the primary sequence of a protein brought together by protein folding.

[2]

**congenic**

Animals that only differ at a single genetic locus.

[3]

**conjugate** (in biochemistry)

1. Chemical species produced in living organisms by covalently linking two chemical moieties from different sources, for example, a conjugate of a *xenobiotic* with some group such as glutathione, sulfate, or glucuronic acid, to make it soluble in water or compartmentalized within the cell.

2. Material produced by attaching two or more substances together, for example, a conjugate of an *antibody* with a fluorochrome, or an enzyme.

[5]

**conjunctivitis, allergic**

Irritation of the ocular conjunctiva, resulting from the activation of conjunctival *mast cells* by airborne *allergens* such as pollens or house dust.

**constant (C) domain**

See *constant (C) region*.

**constant (C) gene**

Gene that encodes the *constant (C) region* of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* chains or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* chains.

**constant (C) region**

Part of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* that is relatively constant in amino acid sequence among different Ig or TCR molecules.

*Note:* In an *antibody* molecule the constant regions of each chain are composed of up to four C domains. The constant region of an antibody determines its general type of interaction.

After [2]

See also *variable (V) region*.

**contact allergen**

Substance that causes a skin *hypersensitivity* reaction by direct contact.

**contact dermatitis**

Skin *inflammation* that occurs when the skin's surface comes in contact with a substance originating outside the body.

*Note:* There are two kinds of contact dermatitis, irritant and *allergic*.

**contact hypersensitivity**

*Immune response* following skin contact with an *antigen*.

**contact sensitivity**

State of immunological *sensitization* in which an *eczematous* epidermal reaction may occur when a *haptén* is applied to the skin of a sensitized individual.

[4]

See also *contact dermatitis*.

**contact urticaria**

*Urticaria* provoked by contact with inducing agents.

[4]

**continuous epitope**

See *linear epitope*.

**conventional dendritic cell**

Predominant type of *dendritic cell* active in *antigen* presentation to and *activation* of *naïve T cells*.

**convergent evolution**

Independent evolution of similarity between molecules or between species.

[3]

**convertase**

Enzyme activity that converts *complement* protein into its reactive form by cleaving it.

*Note:* Generation of the *C3/C5 convertase* is the pivotal event in complement activation.

[7]

**Coombs and Gell classification**

See *Gell and Coombs classification*.

**Coombs test**

Diagnostic test using *anti-immunoglobulin (Ig)* to agglutinate *antibody-coated erythrocytes*.

[3]

*Note:* The direct Coombs test, or direct antiglobulin test (DAT) refers to *agglutination* of a blood sample due to antibodies present on the erythrocyte surface. In the indirect Coombs test, or indirect antiglobulin test (IAT) antibodies free in the subject's *serum* are tested for their availability to agglutinate erythrocytes of known *antigenicity*.

**coreceptor**

Cell surface protein *receptor* that recognizes a substance bound to a primary receptor,

1  
2  
3 and binds to a signaling molecule that thereby enhances the activity of another receptor.

4 *Note 1: Optimal T cell activation in an immune response depends on the*  
5 *involvement of relevant coreceptors occurring in a cluster with the T-cell*  
6 *receptors (TCR). The coreceptors are CD4 or CD8 proteins, which lie*  
7 *alongside the T-cell receptor in the plasma membrane. Only when both*  
8 *coreceptor and receptor bind the major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*  
9 *molecule – antigen complex simultaneously is the full set of intracellular*  
10 *effector molecules recruited and the signal pathway inside the cell*  
11 *maximally activated.*

12  
13  
14 *Note 2: B-cell receptors (BCR) require the contributions of several coreceptors,*  
15 *notably CD19, CD21, and CD81 proteins, for full activation of intracellular*  
16 *signaling pathways.*  
17

### 18 **corticosteroid**

19 Any of the family of steroid molecules that are produced in the adrenal cortex, or their  
20 synthetic analogs.

21  
22 *Note: Corticosteroids can induce apoptotic cell death in lymphocytes, especially*  
23 *developing thymocytes. Therefore, they are useful anti-inflammatory, anti-*  
24 *lymphoid tumor, and immunosuppressive agents.*

25  
26 After [2]

### 27 **costimulation**

28 Delivery of a second signal, in addition to that of antigen binding or antigen  
29 presentation, that is required for lymphocyte proliferation.

30  
31 *Note 1: Co-stimulatory signals are delivered to T cells by the co-stimulatory*  
32 *molecules, B7.1 and B7.2, related molecules (see B7 molecule) that are*  
33 *expressed on the surface of the antigen-presenting cell (APC), and which*  
34 *bind the T cell surface molecule CD28.*

35  
36 *Note 2: B cells may receive co-stimulatory signals from common pathogen*  
37 *components such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS), from complement*  
38 *fragments, or from CD40 ligand (CD40L) expressed on the surface of an*  
39 *activated antigen-specific helper T lymphocyte (Th).*  
40  
41

### 42 **counter-regulation hypothesis**

43 Hypothesis that all types of infection early in childhood may protect against the  
44 development of atopy by driving the production of cytokines such as interleukin-10 (IL-  
45 10) and transforming growth factor- $\beta$  (TGF- $\beta$ ), which downregulate both Th1 and Th2  
46 responses.  
47

48 [2]

### 49 **Crohn disease**

50 Chronic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) thought to result from an abnormal  
51 overresponsiveness to commensal gut flora.

52 [2]

### 53 **cross-matching**



1. Test for determining the compatibility between the blood of a donor and that of a recipient before *transfusion*; the clumping of *erythrocytes* indicates incompatibility.
2. Test for determining tissue compatibility between a transplant donor and the recipient before *transplantation*, in which the recipient's *serum* is tested for *antibodies* that may react with the *lymphocytes* or other cells of the donor.
3. Process of performing one of these tests.

### cross-presentation

#### cross-priming

Activation of *CD8+* *lymphocytes* by the presentation of exogenous *antigens* in association with *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* molecules.

*Note 1:* This is in contrast to normal activation of these lymphocytes (direct-priming) that results from presentation of endogenous antigens.

*Note 2:* The cells that cross-present antigens are the bone marrow-derived *antigen presenting cells (APC)*. The form of antigen they monitor from tissues is predominantly cellular protein, acquired through *phagocytosis* and *macropinocytosis* and presented through two distinct pathways. In one pathway, antigen is transferred into the cytosol where it is degraded by *proteasomes*, and in the other, the antigen is hydrolyzed in the endocytic compartment

*Note 3:* Cross-presentation can lead to different outcomes, *tolerance* or *immunity*.

[13]

### cross-priming

See *cross-presentation*.

### cross-reacting antibody

Any *antibody* that is able to react with an *antigen* that did not specifically stimulate its production.

*Note:* Cross-reactions are usually weaker than the reaction of the antibody with the antigen that caused its production.

### cross-reacting antigen

1. Any *antigen* that is able to react with an *antibody* induced by a different antigen.

*Note:* The two antigens may share the same *antigenic determinants* or carry determinants that are sufficiently alike stereochemically to enable the antibody to react with both.

2. Any antigen that has an identical structure in two strains of microorganism, so that antibody raised against one strain will react with the other strain.

### cross-reactivity

1. Ability of an *antibody* or a *T cell*, specific for one *antigen*, to react with a second antigen.
2. Measure of relatedness between two *antigenic* substances, and (or) the polyspecificity of the antibody molecule (e.g., some *rheumatoid factors*), or of the *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.

1  
2  
3 [4]  
4  
5

6 **cross-reactivity**

7 State of immunological *hypersensitivity* to one substance that predisposes an individual  
8 to sensitivity to other substances that are related in chemical structure (*cross-reacting*  
9 *antigens*).  
10

11 **cross-tolerance** (in immunology)

12 State of immunological *tolerance* to one substance produced by *priming* an animal with  
13 another substance that bears a *cross-reacting antigen*.  
14  
15

16 **cryoglobulin**

17 *Immunoglobulin (Ig)* that forms insoluble aggregates at temperatures below body  
18 temperature.  
19

20 *Note:* Many cryoglobulins function as *autoantibodies* (e.g., *rheumatoid factor*).  
21 Cryoglobulins are found in lymphoproliferative (see *lymphoproliferation*)  
22 diseases, a number of *autoimmune diseases*, as well as chronic infections.  
23 They can cause vasculitic and secondary thrombotic manifestations  
24 (*cryoglobulinemic vasculitis*, *glomerulonephritis*).  
25

26 After [1]  
27

28 **cryoglobulinemic vasculitis**

29 Cutaneous or *systemic vasculitis* caused by cold-labile proteins (*cryoglobulins*,  
30 cryofibrinogen) that leads to increased viscosity, protein precipitation or gelatinification,  
31 *complement* activation, and endothelial cell damage, especially in the cold.  
32

33 *Note:* Frequently associated with chronic hepatitis C or B infection, but can also be  
34 induced by other infections and malignancies.  
35

36 After [1]  
37

38 **cryopyrin**

39 See *NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3*.  
40

41 **cryptic epitope**

42 Any *epitope* that cannot be recognized by a *lymphocyte receptor* until the *antigen* has  
43 been broken down and processed or modified by *hapten* binding.  
44

45 After [2]  
46

47 **cutaneous lymphocyte antigen (CLA)**

48 Cell-surface molecule that is involved in *lymphocyte homing* to the skin in humans.  
49

50 [2]  
51

52 **cutaneous T-cell lymphoma**

53 mycosis fungoides

54 Malignant growth of *T cells* that home (see *homing*) to the skin.  
55

56 [2]  
57  
58  
59  
60

**cytokine**

Any of a group of soluble small proteins released from a variety of cells, typically of the *immune system*, that affect cell behavior in an *autocrine* or *paracrine* fashion.

*Note:* Cytokines produced by *lymphocytes* are known as *lymphokines*; those produced by *monocytes* are called *monokines*. Other types of cytokine include *chemokines*, *growth factors*, colony stimulating factors, *transforming growth factors*, *interferons*, *interleukins* and *tumor necrosis factors*.

**cytokine capture assay**

in vivo cytokine capture assay (IVCCA)

Method to detect *cytokine* release by injecting an animal with a neutralizing biotinylated *antibody* to the cytokine, which inhibits its utilization and allows its accumulation in the blood. Recovered cytokine-antibody complexes are then measured in an *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* with an antibody to a second epitope on the cytokine.

**cytokine profile**

Characteristic pattern of *cytokine* production associated with a defined immunological state.

**cytokine release assay (CRA)**

Method of quantifying *cytokines* released by viable cells, using cytokine-specific *antibodies*.

**cytolysis, immune**

1. Cell lysis caused by a lesion produced by the action of *complement* proteins on the *antibody*-coated plasma membrane of a cell.
2. Cell lysis following plasma membrane reaction with *perforins* released by *natural killer (NK) cells*.

**cytolytic T cell**

See *cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc)*.

**cytomegalovirus (CMV)**

visceral disease virus

Any of a group of highly *host*-specific slow growing herpes viruses that infect humans, monkeys, pigs or rodents, with the production of unique enlarged epithelial cells with intranuclear inclusions and often with a special affinity for the salivary glands.

*Note 1:* The virus specific for humans causes cytomegalic inclusion disease, and it has been associated with a syndrome resembling infectious mononucleosis.

*Note 2:* CMV is of most risk to unborn children of women who get CMV for the first time during pregnancy.

**cytopenia**

Decrease in the number of one or more types of blood cells.

See also *pancytopenia*.

**cytotoxic**

Causing damage to cell structure or function.

[5]

**cytotoxic T cell**

See *cytotoxic T lymphocyte* (CTL, Tc).

**cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc)**

CD8+ T cell

cytolytic T cell

cytotoxic T cell

killer T cell

Any of a subset of *T lymphocytes* bearing the *CD8* surface marker and able to kill *target cells* [infected somatic or tumor cells, recognized by the *antigen receptor complex* (*TCR/CD3*)] after induction of a specific *immune response* to the *antigens* bound to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*.

*Note:* CD4+ T cells may also become cytotoxic.

**cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4)**

CD152

High *affinity* receptor for *B7 molecules* expressed on *T cells*, binding of which inhibits *T cell activation*.

[7]

*Note:* Mutations in the gene encoding CTLA-4 have been associated with various *autoimmune diseases*.

**cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) assay**

Assay based on quantitation of cell death caused by sensitized (see *sensitization*) *lymphocytes* or splenocytes cultured with a fixed number of tumor or other *target cells* that have been prelabeled with  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ . The  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  is taken up and reversibly binds to cytosolic proteins. When these target cells are incubated with sensitized lymphocytes, the target cells are killed and the  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  is released.

**cytotoxin**

Substance with a specific toxic effect on certain cells.

*Note:* Major cytotoxins made by *cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL, Tc)* and *natural killer (NK) cells* that participate in the destruction of *target cells* include *perforins*, *granzymes*, and *granulolysins*.

**D gene**

See *diversity (D) gene*.

**DEC-205**

CD205

Surface *antigen* characteristic of *dendritic cells*.

**DNA vaccination**

DNA immunization

Injection of DNA into muscle, followed by its transcription and translation into a protein or proteins that elicit *antibody* and *T cell* responses.

See also *immunization*, *vaccination*.

**DP, DQ, and DR molecules**

*Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules* occurring on human *B lymphocytes* and *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*.

**danger hypothesis**

Hypothesis that suggests it is not foreignness of a molecule per se but rather its ability to cause cell damage or stress that induces an *immune response*. Often implicated in causation of *idiosyncratic drug reactions*.

**death receptor**

death ligand receptor

Cell-surface *receptor* whose binding to extracellular *ligands* stimulates *apoptosis* in the receptor-bearing cell through the *extrinsic pathway*.

See also *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*.

**death domain**

Protein-interaction domain originally discovered in proteins involved in programmed cell death or *apoptosis*.

**decay-accelerating factor (DAF)**

CD55

Cell-surface molecule that protects cells from lysis by *complement*.

*Note:* The decay-accelerating factor binds to *C3 convertases* of both the *alternative pathway* and *classical pathway of complement activation* and, by displacing Bb and C2b respectively, prevents their action. Its absence causes the disease paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

[2]

**defensin**

Any member of a family of oligopeptides made within the body, notably by *neutrophils* and *macrophages*, and having potent antimicrobial properties.

*Note 1:* Defensins play important roles against invading microbes. They act against bacteria, fungi, and viruses by binding to their membranes and increasing membrane permeability.

*Note 2:* Human defensins are classified into the  $\alpha$ -defensins and  $\beta$ -defensins on the basis of their sequence homology and their cysteine residues.

After [1]

**degranulation**

1  
2  
3 Cell reaction that releases antimicrobial *cytotoxic* molecules and other substances (e.g.,  
4 *histamine*) from secretory vesicles called granules found inside some cells.

5 *Note:* Degranulation occurs in several different cells involved in the immune  
6 system, including *granulocytes* (*neutrophils*, *basophils* and *eosinophils*),  
7 *mast cells*, and certain *lymphocytes* such as *natural killer (NK) cells* and  
8 *cytotoxic T cells*.  
9

### 11 **delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH)**

12 Gell and Coombs Type IV reaction

13 Form of *T cell*-mediated *immunity* in which the ultimate effector cell is the activated  
14 mononuclear *phagocyte* (*macrophage*); the response of DTH appears fully over 24 to  
15 48 h. Previous exposure is required.

16 *Note:* Examples include response to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*tuberculin test*)  
17 and *contact dermatitis*.  
18

19 [4]  
20

### 21 **delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) assay**

22 In vivo assay of *cell-mediated immune response*, elicited by *antigen* in the skin and  
23 mediated by *CD4+ Th1 cells*.

24 *Note:* DTH reactions are often divided into two phases which should be assessed in the  
25 assay: the *sensitization* phase, referring to the initial *immunization* with  
26 specific antigen, and the efferent or *challenge* phase of the DTH response,  
27 which usually follows 6 to 14 days after sensitization.  
28  
29  
30

### 31 **dendritic cell**

32 interdigitating dendritic cell

33 interdigitating reticular cell

34 Ameboid cell that is *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II*-positive, *Fc*  
35 *receptor*-negative, and presents processed *antigens* to *T cells* in the T-cell areas of  
36 *secondary lymphoid* tissues.  
37

38 *Note 1:* Dendritic cells are potent stimulators of T-cell responses. Nonlymphoid  
39 tissues also contain dendritic cells, but these are not able to stimulate T-cell  
40 responses until they are activated.  
41

42 *Note 2:* There are three major subclasses of dendritic cells, *conventional dendritic*  
43 *cells*, *Langerhans cells*, and *plasmacytoid dendritic cells*.  
44

45 *Note 3:* This is a different cell type from the *follicular dendritic cell*, which is *Fc*  
46 *receptor*-positive.  
47

48 *Note 4:* Some authors also distinguish myeloid and lymphoid dendritic cells based  
49 on lineage.  
50

51 [14]

52 *Note 5:* Some confusion in the classification of dendritic cells may arise from  
53 systems based on function, morphology, or lineage, and possibly species  
54 differences.  
55

56 After [2, 3]

### 57 **deposition, immune complex**

58  
59  
60

Precipitation of *immune complex* in organs and tissues, often causing local *inflammation*.

*Note:* Immune complex deposition is a prominent feature of *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *cryoglobulinemia*, *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *scleroderma*, and *Sjögren syndrome*.

### **dermatitis**

*Inflammation* of the skin showing redness, swelling, infiltration, scaling, and sometimes vesicles and blisters: *contact dermatitis* is due to local exposure and may be caused by irritation, *allergy*, or *photocontact dermatitis*.

Modified from [4]

### **dermatomyositis**

Disease characterized by the presence of *inflammation* of the skin and muscles.

*Note:* Its cause is unknown, but it may be associated with a viral infection or some *autoimmune reaction* and may present also as paraneoplastic phenomena (see *paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome*).

### **desensitization**

Generally transient state of specific non-reactivity in a previously sensitized individual, resulting from repeated *antigen* exposures.

[4]

See also *sensitization*.

### **determinant**

See *antigenic determinant*.

### **diabetes mellitus, insulin-dependent**

See *diabetes mellitus type 1*.

### **diabetes mellitus type 1**

Disease in which the  $\beta$  cells of the pancreatic islets of Langerhans are destroyed with the result that no insulin is produced.

*Note:* The disease is believed to result from an *autoimmune* attack on the  $\beta$  cells. It is also known as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), as the symptoms can be ameliorated by injections of insulin.

[2]

### **diapedesis**

Movement of blood cells, particularly *leukocytes*, from the blood across blood vessel walls into tissues.

[2]

### **differential** (in hematology)

Reported blood count that distinguishes the percentages of the different blood cells present.

**differential splicing**

Utilization and splicing of different exons from a primary RNA transcript in order to generate different mRNA sequences.

[3]

**differentiation antigen**

Cell surface molecule expressed at a particular stage of development or on cells of a given lineage.

[3]

**DiGeorge syndrome**

*Immunodeficiency* caused by a congenital failure in *thymic* development resulting in a lack of mature functional *T cells*.

[3]

**direct antiglobulin test (DAT)**

See *Coombs test*.

**direct Coombs test**

See *Coombs test*.

**discontinuous epitope**

See *conformational epitope*.

**disintegrin and metalloproteinase domain-containing protein 33 (ADAM33)**

Member of the ADAM (A Disintegrin And Metalloproteinase domain) family of transmembrane proteins, possibly related to *asthma* susceptibility.

**diversity (D) gene**

Small segment of *immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy-chain* or *T-cell receptor* DNA between the *variable (V) gene* and *joining (J) gene* segments, coding for the third hypervariable region of the receptors.

See also *V(D)J recombination*.

**domain** (in molecular biology)

Structural element of a polypeptide.

[3]

**dot plot**

Two-dimensional graphical representation of individual data points.

*Note:* Often used to visualize the fluorescence and light scattering intensities acquired during *flow cytometry*.

**double diffusion**

See *Ouchterlony technique*.



**double-negative cell**

*Immature T cell* in the *thymus* that lacks expression of the two *coreceptors*, *CD4* and *CD8*.

*Note:* In a normal *thymus*, double-negative cells represent about 5% of *thymocytes*.

[2]

**double-positive cell**

*Immature T cell* in the *thymus* that is characterized by expression of both *CD4* and *CD8* *coreceptor* proteins.

*Note:* In a normal *thymus*, double-positive cells represent the majority (80%) of *thymocytes*.

[2]

See also *pre-T cell*.

**draining lymph node**

Any *lymph node* that is downstream of a site of infection and thus receives *antigens* and microbes from the site via the *lymphatic* system.

*Note:* Draining lymph nodes often enlarge enormously during an *immune response* and can be palpated; they were originally called swollen glands.

[2]

**Draize test**

## 1. ocular

Test for potential to cause irritation to the eye in which the test substance is applied directly to the eye of restrained rabbits.

*Note:* Widely criticized as unethical. Now often replaced with an acute eye irritation test using cadaveric chicken eyes.

## 2. skin

Test for the potential of a material to cause irritation or corrosion following local dermal application. Generally performed with rabbits.

[5]

**drug-induced autoimmunity**

Immune-mediated *idiosyncratic drug reaction* against *self-antigens*.

**drug-induced lupus**

*Idiosyncratic drug reaction* similar in character to *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)* and having *anti-nuclear antibodies (ANA)*, but generally milder in nature and resolving when drug exposure is discontinued.

**dyscrasia**

See *blood dyscrasia*.

**eczema**

1  
2  
3 Acute or chronic skin *inflammation* with erythema, papules, vesicles, pustules, scales,  
4 crusts, or scabs, alone or in combination, of varied etiology.

5  
6 [5]  
7

### 8 **edema**

9 Presence of abnormally large amounts of fluid in intercellular spaces of body tissues.

10  
11 [5]  
12

### 13 **effector cell**

14 Cell that carries out an immune function, e.g., *cytokine* release, *cytotoxicity*.

15  
16 [3]  
17

### 18 **elicitation**

19 Production of a cell-mediated or *antibody*-mediated *allergic* response by exposure of a  
20 sensitized individual to an *allergen*.

21 [4]

22 See also *cell-mediated immune response*.  
23

### 24 **embryonic stem (ES) cell**

25 Embryonic cell that will grow continuously in culture and that retains the ability to  
26 contribute to all cell lineages.

27  
28 *Note 1:* ES cells can be genetically manipulated in tissue culture and then inserted  
29 into mouse blastocysts to generate mutant lines of mice; often genes are  
30 deleted in ES cells by homologous recombination and the mutant ES cells  
31 are then used to generate gene *knockout mice*.

32  
33 *Note 2:* ES cells may also be used to *clone* organisms.  
34

### 35 **endocytosis**

36 Cellular ingestion of macromolecules by invagination of plasma membrane to produce  
37 an intracellular vesicle that encloses the ingested material.

38  
39 [3]  
40

### 41 **endogenous**

42 Antonym: exogenous

43 Produced within or caused by factors within an organism.

44  
45 [5]  
46

### 47 **endosome**

48 Intracellular smooth surfaced vesicle in which endocytosed (see *endocytosis*) material  
49 passes on its way to the *lysosomes*.

50  
51 [3]  
52

### 53 **endotoxin**

54 Pathogenic cell wall-associated lipopolysaccharides of Gram-negative bacteria.

55  
56 [3]  
57  
58  
59  
60

**enhancement** (in immunology)

See *immune enhancement*.

**enhancing antibody**

*Antibody* that binds to an antibody-*antigen* complex or idiotypic-*anti-idiotypic antibody* complex and strengthens the interaction.

**enterotoxin**

*Toxin* affecting intestinal cells and thus causing food poisoning.

*Note:* Enterotoxins stimulate many types of *T cells* by binding to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules* and the *V<sub>b</sub> domain* [see *variable (V) domain*] of certain *T-cell receptors (TCR)*. Enterotoxins have thus been referred to as *superantigens*.

**enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)**

Procedure for detection or quantitation of an *antibody* or *antigen* using a *ligand* (e.g., an *anti-immunoglobulin*) conjugated to an enzyme that changes the color of a substrate.

[3]

*Note 1:* With a fixed amount of immobilized antigen, the amount of labeled antibody bound decreases as the concentration of unlabelled antigen is increased, allowing quantification of unlabelled antigen (competitive ELISA).

*Note 2:* With a fixed amount of one immobilized antibody, the binding of a second, labeled antibody increases as the concentration of antigen increases, allowing quantification of antigen (sandwich ELISA).

After [1]

See also *enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay, immunosorbent*.

**enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay**

Adaptation of *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* in which cells are placed over *antibodies* or *antigens* attached to a plastic surface. The antigen or antibody traps the cells' secreted products, which can then be detected using an enzyme-coupled antibody that cleaves a colorless substrate to make a localized colored spot. This allows quantitation of the number of cells producing a given product such as a cytokine.

**eosinophil**

Circulating granular *leukocyte (granulocyte)* having prominent granules that stain specifically by eosin and containing numerous *lysosomes*.

*Note 1:* Eosinophils are important effector cells in immune reactions to *antigens* that induce high levels of *immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies* (e.g., parasites).

*Note 2:* Eosinophils are also abundant at sites of *immediate-type hypersensitivity reactions*.

[4]

**eosinophil chemotactic factor of anaphylaxis (ECF-A)**

1  
2  
3 *Cytokine* that facilitates *anaphylaxis* and attracts *eosinophils* during substrate release by  
4 *mast cells*.  
5  
6

**eotaxin**

CCL11

8 *CC chemokine* that acts predominantly on *eosinophils*.  
9  
10

[2]  
11  
12**epitope**

13 Any part of a molecule recognized by *antigen receptors* on *T- or B cells* (T-cell epitopes  
14 or B-cell epitopes).  
15

16 *Note:* A macromolecule can contain many different epitopes, each capable of  
17 stimulating production of a different specific *antibody*.  
18

19 See also *antigenic determinant*.  
20

**epitope retrieval**

antigen retrieval

21 Treatment of denatured *antigen* with heat or other agents in order to regenerate  
22 (unmask) lost *antibody*-binding capacity.  
23  
24  
25  
26

**epitope spreading**

27 Increase in the number of *epitopes* targeted by *autoantibodies* and (or) *T cells*. The  
28 epitopes may be on the same *autoantigen* (intramolecular epitope spreading) and (or)  
29 on other autoantigens (intermolecular epitope spreading).  
30  
31

32 *Note:* This is a characteristic sign of progression of *autoimmune disease* from  
33 initial activation to a chronic state.  
34

[1]  
35  
36**Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)**

37 Virus responsible for infectious mononucleosis and Burkitt's lymphoma. This virus is  
38 used to immortalize human *B lymphocytes* in vitro.  
39  
40

[3]  
41  
42**equivalence** (in immunology)

43 Ratio of *antibody* to *antigen* at which *immunoprecipitation* of the reactants is virtually  
44 complete.  
45

[3]  
46  
47**equivalence zone**

48 Range of concentrations of *antigen* and *antibody* in which neither is in significant excess  
49 in a *precipitin* reaction.  
50  
51  
52

**erythema**

53 Redness of the skin produced by congestion of the capillaries.  
54  
55

[5]  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

**erythroblastosis fetalis**

Two potentially disabling or fatal blood disorders in infants: *Rhesus (Rh) factor* incompatibility disease and *ABO blood group* incompatibility disease.

*Note:* The disorders are caused by incompatibility between a mother's blood and her unborn baby's blood, causing the mother's *immune system* to launch an *immune response* against the baby's *erythrocytes*.

**erythrocyte**

Red blood cell.

**erythropoiesis**

*Erythrocyte* production.

[3]

**erythropoietin**

Glycoprotein hormone that stimulates the production of *erythrocytes* by *stem cells* in *bone marrow*.

*Note:* It is produced mainly by the kidneys and is released in response to decreased levels of oxygen in body tissue.

**euglobulin**

Member of a class of proteins insoluble in water but soluble in saline solutions.

**exocytosis**

Release of the content of an intracellular vesicle to the exterior of the cell.

*Note:* The vesicles make their way to the plasma membrane, with which they fuse to permit the contents to be released to the external environment.

[7]

**exotoxin**

Pathogenic protein secreted by bacteria.

[3]

**experimental allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE)**

See *encephalomyelitis, experimental allergic*.

**extravasation**

Movement of cells or fluid from within blood vessels to the surrounding tissues.

[2]

**extrinsic allergic alveolitis**

See *hypersensitivity pneumonitis (HPS)*.

**extrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)**

*Apoptotic* mechanism triggered by extracellular *ligands* binding to specific cell-surface receptors (*death receptors*), which then signal the cell to undergo programmed cell

1  
2  
3 death.

4 [2]

5 See also *intrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)*.

6  
7  
8 **exudate**

9 Extravascular fluid containing proteins and cellular debris that accumulates during  
10 *inflammation*.

11 [3]

12  
13 **Fab fragment**

14 Monovalent *antigen-binding* ('ab') fragment obtained following papain digestion of  
15 *immunoglobulin (Ig)*. It consists of an intact *light chain* and the N-terminal VH and C H1  
16 domains of the *heavy chain*.

17 [3]

18  
19  
20 **F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragment**

21 Bivalent *antigen-binding* fragment obtained following pepsin digestion of  
22 *immunoglobulin*. Consists of both *light chains* and the N-terminal part of both *heavy*  
23 *chains* linked by disulfide bonds.

24 [3]

25 *Note:* Because it lacks the *Fc fragment* it does not bind the *Fc-receptor*, e.g., in  
26 flow cytometry.

27  
28  
29 **Fc fragment**

30 Crystallizable, non-*antigen-binding* fragment of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecule  
31 obtained following papain digestion. Consists of the C-terminal portion of both *heavy*  
32 *chains*, responsible for binding to *Fc receptors* and *complement* factor C1q.

33 [3]

34  
35  
36 **Fc receptor**

37 *Receptors* expressed on a wide range of cells, interacting with the Fc portion (see *Fc*  
38 *fragment*) of *immunoglobulins (Ig)* belonging to various *isotypes*.

39 *Note:* Membrane-bound Fc receptors mediate different effector functions (e.g.,  
40 *endocytosis*, *antibody-dependent-cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)*) and induce  
41 mediator release. Both the membrane-bound and soluble forms of Fc  
42 receptors regulate *antibody* production by *B lymphocytes*.

43 After [4, 15]

44  
45  
46 **Fc region**

47 See *Fc fragment*.

48  
49  
50 **Fd fragment**

51 *Heavy chain* portion of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* N-terminal to the papain hydrolysis site,  
52 after reduction and separation of the *light chain* portion.

53 See also *Fab fragment*.

**fMLP peptide**

Formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine, a chemoattractant (see *chemotactic factor*, *chemotaxis*) derived from degradation of bacterial or mitochondrial proteins. It causes *neutrophil activation*.

**Foxp3**

Transcription repressor that is specifically expressed in *CD4+CD25+ T cells*.

*Note:* Mutations in the FOXP3 gene may lead to an *autoimmune* syndrome called IPEX (*immunodysregulation–polyendocrinopathy–enteropathy, X-linked*).

[1]

**Fv fragment**

*Variable (V) region* fragment of an *antibody heavy chain* or *light chain*.

[3]

**familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome (FCAS)**

Episodic *autoinflammatory disease*, induced by exposure to cold, and caused by mutations in the gene CSA1, encoding *cryopyrin*.

After [2]

**familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (FHL)**

Progressive and potentially lethal inflammatory disease caused by an inherited deficiency of *perforin*.

*Note:* Large numbers of *polyclonal CD8+ T cells* accumulate in *lymphoid tissue* and other organs, and this is associated with activated *macrophages* that phagocytose (see *phagocytosis*) blood cells, including *erythrocytes* and *leukocytes*.

After [2]

**farmer's lung**

*Hypersensitivity* disease caused by the interaction of *immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies* with large amounts of an inhaled *allergen* in the alveolar wall of the lung, causing alveolar wall *inflammation* and compromising gas exchange.

After [2]

**Fas**

Cd95

Member of the *tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor* gene family. Engagement of Fas on the surface of the cell by the Fas *ligand* (CD178) present on *cytotoxic* cells, can trigger *apoptosis* in the Fas-bearing *target cell*.

[3]

**fetal antigens**

Human cancer cell *antigens*, which *cross-react* serologically (see *serology*) with antigens normally expressed by embryonic tissue, e.g., *carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)*, or *α-fetoprotein (AFP)*.

1  
2  
3 After [16]  
4  
5

6 **fetal tolerance**

7 Lack of *rejection* of a fetal *allograft* carrying paternal *major histocompatibility complex*  
8 (*MHC*) and *minor histocompatibility antigens* that differ from those of the mother.  
9

10 **fibrinolysis**

11 Enzymatic lysis of a fibrin clot.  
12

13 **fibrinolytic**

14 Pertaining to, characterized by, or causing the breakdown of fibrin (*fibrinolysis*), usually  
15 by the action of plasmin.  
16  
17

18 **fibroblast**

19 Connective tissue cell that produces collagen and plays an important part in wound  
20 healing.  
21

22 [3]  
23

24 **first line of defence**

25 Surface tissues, notably the skin, respiratory tract and gastrointestinal tract.  
26

27 *Note 1:* These tissues are rich in *immunocompetent* cells that form a first line of  
28 defence by recognizing pathogens, destroying them with secretory  
29 *antibodies*, or preventing their intrusion into the organism.  
30

31 *Note 2:* Internal organs may also have a first line of defence, e.g., the microglia  
32 have been considered as a first line of defence against brain infections.  
33

34 **flow cytometry**

35 Method of sorting and measuring types of cells by fluorescent labeling of markers on the  
36 surface of the cells. It is sometimes referred to as Fluorescence-Assisted (or Activated)  
37 Cell Sorting (FACS) analysis.  
38

39 **fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)**

40 Green fluorescent dye used to 'tag' *antibodies* for use in *immunofluorescence*.  
41

42 [3]  
43

44 **fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS)**

45 Fluorescence-assisted cell sorting  
46

47 See *flow cytometry*.  
48

49 **fluorescent antibody**

50 *Antibody conjugated* to a fluorescent dye such as *fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)*.  
51

52 [3]  
53

54 **follicular dendritic cell**

55 *Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II-negative Fc receptor-positive dendritic*  
56 *cell* which bears *immune complexes* on its surface and is probably involved in the  
57  
58



1  
2  
3 generation of *antibody*-secreting cells and maintenance of *B-cell* memory (see *memory*  
4 *cell*) in *germinal centers*.

5 *Note*: This is a different cell type from the *dendritic cell*.

6  
7 [3]  
8

### 9 **footpad test**

10 Test for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which the test substance is injected into the front  
11 footpad of a Guinea pig and *challenge* is performed 7 days later.  
12

### 13 **Forssman antigen**

14 Glycolipid *heterophile antigen* (globopentacyceramide) expressed on cell surfaces  
15 during embryonic and adult life in rodents and other mammals, and found in many  
16 pathogens, but probably not in humans.

17 *Note 1*: Anti-Forssman *antibodies* directed against the terminal sugar moiety are  
18 commonly found in plasma and may be involved in *Guillain–Barré*  
19 *syndrome (GB)*.

20 *Note 2*: Anti-Forssman antibodies reportedly disrupt tight junction formation,  
21 apical-basal polarization, and cell adhesion.  
22

23 After [17]  
24  
25

### 26 **framework region**

27 One of several relatively conserved amino acid sequences that flank the *hypervariable*  
28 *regions* in *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) regions* and  
29 maintain a common overall structure for all V region domains.  
30

31 [3]  
32  
33

### 34 **Freund's adjuvant**

35 Complete Freund's *adjuvant* is an emulsion of aqueous *antigen* in mineral oil that  
36 contains heat-killed *Mycobacteria*.

37 *Note 1*: Incomplete Freund's adjuvant lacks the *Mycobacteria*.

38 *Note 2*: It can cause painful local *inflammation* and should be used with care.  
39

40 After [3]  
41  
42

### 43 **$\gamma$ : $\delta$ T cell**

44 *Lymphocyte* whose *T-cell receptor (TCR)* is a heterodimer of a  $\gamma$  chain and a  $\delta$  chain.

45 See  *$\gamma$ : $\delta$  T-cell receptor*.  
46

### 47 **$\gamma$ : $\delta$ T-cell receptor**

48 *T-cell receptor (TCR)* composed of two different glycoprotein chains, designated  $\gamma$  and  
49  $\delta$ , assembled in a  $\gamma$ : $\delta$  heterodimer.

50 *Note*: Cells bearing these *receptors* are called  *$\gamma$ : $\delta$  T cells*. The group of  $\gamma$ : $\delta$  T cells  
51 is much less common than  *$\alpha$ : $\beta$  T cells*, and usually found in the gut *mucosa*,  
52 in a population of *lymphocytes* known as *intra-epithelial lymphocytes (IELs)*.  
53  
54

### 55 **$\gamma$ -interferon (IFN- $\gamma$ )**

56 Member of a group of *cytokines*, the *interferons*, which has as its primary action the  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 activation of *macrophages* and can induce cells to resist viral replication.

4 *Note:*  $\gamma$ -interferon is a product of *CD4+ Th1* cells, *CD8+ T cells*, and *natural killer*  
5 (*NK*) cells.  
6

### 8 **G protein**

9 Any member of a family of guanine nucleotide-binding proteins that binds GTP, converts  
10 it to GDP, and interacts with so-called G protein-coupled *receptors* in the process of cell  
11 *signal transduction*.  
12

13 *Note:* There are two kinds of G protein, the heterotrimeric ( $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ ) receptor-  
14 associated G proteins, and the small G proteins, such as Ras and Raf, that  
15 act downstream of many transmembrane signaling events.  
16

### 17 **gp120**

18 Viral glycoprotein, non-covalently associated with gp41 in the viral envelope of *human*  
19 *immunodeficiency virus (HIV)*.  
20

21 *Note:* The gp120 portion of the glycoprotein complex binds with high *affinity* to the  
22 cell-surface molecule *CD4*. Before fusion and entry of the virus, gp120 must  
23 bind to a *coreceptor* in the membrane of the host-cell, for instance *chemokine*  
24 *receptors* (mainly CCR5).  
25  
26

### 27 **gammaglobulin**

28 One of a group of *serum* proteins, mostly *immunoglobulins (Ig)*, which have the greatest  
29 mobility towards the cathode during electrophoresis.  
30

31 After [3]  
32

### 33 **gamma-interferon**

34 See  *$\gamma$ -interferon (IFN- $\gamma$ )*.  
35  
36

### 37 **ganglioside**

38 Member of a group of glycolipid components of all vertebrate cell membranes that are  
39 expressed at high densities in peripheral nervous tissues.  
40

41 *Note:* Gangliosides are targets of *autoantibodies* in *autoimmune* peripheral  
42 neuropathies (e.g. anti-GM1, -GQ1b, -GD1b). Induced by infection, *natural*  
43 *autoantibodies* cross-reacting with gangliosides may become pathogenic  
44 after *affinity maturation* and *class switching*.  
45

46 [1]  
47

### 48 **gastritis, autoimmune**

49 *Autoimmune*-mediated destruction of the gastric *mucosa* that may result in the  
50 development of *pernicious anemia*.  
51

52 *Note:* Autoimmune gastritis is associated with *autoantibodies* to H<sup>+</sup>/K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase of  
53 gastric parietal cells as well as *autoantibodies* to the intrinsic factor  
54 produced by these cells.  
55

56 [1]  
57

### 58 **Gell and Coombs classification**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
Classification of immune mechanisms of tissue injury into four types: type I, *immediate-type hypersensitivity* reactions, mediated by interaction of *immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody* and *antigen* causing the release of *histamine* and other mediators; type II, antibody-mediated *hypersensitivity* reactions, due to antibody-antigen interactions on cell surfaces; type III, *immune complex*, local or general inflammatory responses due to formation of circulating immune complexes and their deposition in tissues; and type IV cell-mediated hypersensitivity reactions, initiated by sensitized *T lymphocytes* either by release of *lymphokines* or by T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity [see *cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL)*].

### 15 **gene knockout**

16 gene targeting

17 Method of disabling a specific gene by homologous recombination with an introduced  
18 DNA construct designed for that purpose.

19 See also *knockout*, *knockout mouse*.

### 22 **gene rearrangement**

23 Structural alteration in a chromosome that changes the order of its genetic loci,  
24 occurring by DNA recombination, e.g., during development or in some cancers.

25 *Note:* In *immunology*, it refers to recombination of gene segments in  
26 *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* loci to produce a functional  
27 *variable (V) region* sequence.  
28  
29

### 30 **gene targeting**

31 See *gene knockout*.

### 34 **germ-free**

35 gnotobiotic

36 Descriptor applied to animals (usually mice) raised in the complete absence of intestinal  
37 and other microorganisms.

38 *Note:* Such mice have very depleted *immune systems*, but they can respond  
39 normally to any specific *antigen*, provided it is mixed with a strong *adjuvant*.  
40  
41

### 42 **germ line** (in immunology)

43 Referring to genes in their unrearranged state rather than those rearranged for  
44 production of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* molecules.

45 After [7]  
46  
47

### 48 **germinal center**

49 Discrete area within *lymph nodes* and *spleen* where *B-cell maturation* and *memory*  
50 development occur.

51 [3]  
52  
53

### 54 **giant cell**

55 Large multinucleate cell derived from fused *macrophages* and often present in  
56 *granulomas*.  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 [3]  
4  
5

6 **glomerulonephritis**

7 Any of a group of kidney diseases involving *inflammation* of the renal glomeruli (see  
8 *glomerulus*), often as a result of *antibody-antigen* complexes that localize in the kidney.

9 *Note: Acute nephritis* is marked by blood in the urine.  
10

11 **glomerulonephropathy**

12 glomerulopathy

13 Disease of the renal *glomeruli*, which may show either thickening of the glomerular  
14 basement membrane due to the accretion of proteins or a minimal change disease, in  
15 which there is functional damage but little structural change by light microscopy.  
16

17 [1]  
18  
19

20 **glomerulus**

21 Tuft or a cluster, as of a plexus of capillary blood vessels or nerve fibers (e.g.,  
22 capillaries of the filtration apparatus of the kidney).  
23

24 [5]  
25

26 **glucocorticoid**

27 Any member of the group of endogenous hormones that play an important role in the  
28 normal regulation of the *immune system* and act as physiological *immunosuppressants*  
29 involved in the control of immune and inflammatory hyperactivity during a stress  
30 response.  
31

32 **glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD)**

33 Main *autoantigen* in *diabetes mellitus type 1* and stiff-person syndrome (a neurological  
34 *autoimmune disease*).  
35

36 *Note: GAD* is localized in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells and  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid-responsive  
37 (GABAergic) neurons.  
38

39 [1]  
40

41 **gluten**

- 42 1. Any of the prolamins found in cereal grains, especially the prolamins in wheat, rye,  
43 barley, and possibly oats, which cause digestive disorders, notably *celiac disease*.  
44 2. In wheat, mixture of water-insoluble proteins, including gliadins, that give wheat  
45 dough its elastic texture.  
46  
47

48 **gluten enteropathy**

49 See *celiac disease*.  
50

51 **gluten intolerance**

52 See *celiac disease*.  
53  
54

55 **gnotobiotic**

56 See *germ-free*.  
57  
58  
59  
60

**Goodpasture syndrome**

Goodpasture disease

*Autoimmune disease* of humans in which *glomerulonephritis* and pulmonary hemorrhage are produced by *complement*-mediated tissue damage caused by *antibodies* directed against the renal glomerular and alveolar basement membranes.

**graft**

Tissue *transplanted* into a *host* or surgically moved from one site to another within an individual.

See also *allograft*, *autograft*, *isograft*, *xenograft*.

**graft rejection**

Destruction of *grafted* tissue by *host lymphocytes* following an *adaptive immune response*.

See also *rejection*.

**graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)**

Disease that occurs following *bone marrow transplantation* between genetically non-identical people and in which mature *T cells* in the transplanted bone marrow attack and destroy the recipients's tissues.

See also *graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction*.

**graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction**

Reaction occurring when *T lymphocytes* present in a *graft* recognize and attack *host* cells.

[3]

**granulocyte**

*Myeloid* cell containing cytoplasmic granules (i.e., *neutrophils*, *eosinophils* and *basophils*).

[3]

**granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)**

Hematopoietic (see *hematopoiesis*) factor augmenting the production of *neutrophils* in the *bone marrow*.

**granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF)**

*Cytokine* that stimulates production of *granulocytes* and *monocytes* from *stem cells*.

**granulocytopenia**

Decreased circulating *granulocytes*.

See also *agranulocytosis*.

**granuloma**

1  
2  
3 Mass or nodule of granulation tissue, with actively growing *fibroblasts* and capillary  
4 buds, characterised by the presence of aggregates of modified *macrophages*  
5 resembling epithelial cells (epithelioid histiocytes), and *lymphocytes*, surrounded by a  
6 rim of giant multinucleate cells, either of the *Langerhans* or foreign body type.

7  
8 *Note:* Granuloma is due to a chronic inflammatory process associated with  
9 infectious disease, such as tuberculosis, syphilis, *sarcoidosis*, leprosy,  
10 lymphogranuloma, etc., or with invasion by a foreign body.

11 After [18]

### 12 13 **granzyme**

14 Member of a family of serine esterases present in the granules of *cytotoxic T*  
15 *lymphocytes* and *natural killer (NK) cells*. They induce *apoptosis* in the *target cell* that  
16 they enter through *perforin* channels inserted into the target cell membrane by the  
17 cytotoxic lymphocyte.

18 [3]

### 19 20 21 **Graves disease**

22 Hyperthyroidism associated with diffuse hyperplastic goitre resulting from production of  
23 a *thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR)*-binding *autoantibody*.

### 24 25 26 **growth factor**

27 Any of a group of biologically active poly-peptides that function as hormone-like  
28 regulatory signals, controlling the growth and differentiation of responsive cells.

### 29 30 31 **Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS)**

32 Type of *idiopathic* polyneuritis in which *autoimmunity* to peripheral nerve myelin leads to  
33 a condition characterized by chronic demyelination of the spinal cord and peripheral  
34 nerves.

35 [7]

### 36 37 38 **guinea pig maximization test (GPMT)**

39 *Skin sensitization test* for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which shaved guinea pig skin is  
40 exposed to intradermal injections of a test agent together with complete *Freund's*  
41 *adjuvant*, followed by an occlusive patch for boosting (see *booster*) for 48 h beginning  
42 on day 7, and *challenged* on day 21.

### 43 44 45 **gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)**

46 *Lymphoid* cells and tissues lining the *mucosa* that seem to serve as the first point of  
47 *antigen* contact via this route, including *Peyer's patches*, the *appendix*, *tonsils*, adenoids  
48 and mesenteric *lymph nodes*.

49 *Note:* Large aggregates of GALT have distinct B cell follicles and T cell areas.  
50 Antigen-presenting accessory cells are also present.

### 51 52 53 **H-chain**

54 See *heavy chain*.

**H-2**

Region of mouse chromosome 17 coding the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*.

**H-2 complex**

Mouse *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* coded by *H-2*.

**hairy cell leukemia**

*B cell* neoplasm, usually occurring during middle age, constituting about 2% of all *leukemias* and responding well to chemotherapy. The neoplastic cells have fine, hairlike surfaces.

After [19]

**haplotype**

Set of allelic (see *allele*) variants present at a given genetic region.

[3]

**hapten**

Low-molecular-mass molecule that is not itself *immunogenic* unless complexed with a carrier, such as a protein. Once bound, it presents an *epitope* that can cause the *sensitization of lymphocytes*.

[5]

**haptenic**

Able to act as a *hapten*.

**Hashimoto thyroiditis**

chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis

*Autoimmune disease* where the body's own *antibodies* attack the cells of the thyroid.

**hay fever**

pollenosis

*Allergic* condition affecting the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract and the eyes, characterized by nasal discharge (see *rhinitis*), sneezing, and itchy, watery eyes; and usually caused by an abnormal sensitivity to airborne pollen.

**heat-shock proteins**

Evolutionarily conserved proteins, found in many organisms, that are induced upon exposure of cells to various types of stress, including heat, oxidative or hypoxic stress, and deprivation of nutrients or essential ions.

**heavy chain**

H-chain

Larger of the two types of polypeptide chain found in *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecules.

*Note:* Each heavy chain is linked by disulfide bonds to a light chain and to another, identical heavy chain. Each heavy chain consists of an *Fc fragment* and an *Fd fragment*. Heavy chains carry the *antigenic determinants* that

differentiate the various immunoglobulin classes.

### helper cell

See *helper T lymphocyte (Th)*.

### helper T lymphocyte (Th)

helper cell

helper T cell

T helper cell

Member of a subclass of *T lymphocytes* that provides help (in the form of *cytokines* and/or cognate interactions) necessary for the expression of effector function by other cells in the *immune system*.

*Note:* Helper T-cells recognize *antigen* in association with *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II* gene products. Depending on their capacity to produce various cytokines, one can functionally differentiate *Th1* [*interleukin-2-* (IL-2-) and *IFN- $\gamma$* -producing] and *Th2* (interleukins IL-3-, IL-4- and IL-6-producing) cells.

Modified from [4]

### hemagglutination

*Agglutination of erythrocytes.*

### hemagglutinin

Any molecule that agglutinates *erythrocytes*.

See also *agglutination*.

[3]

### hematopoiesis

Production of *erythrocytes*, *leukocytes* and *platelets*.

[3]

### hematopoietic stem cell

Self-renewing *stem cell* that is capable of giving rise to all of the formed elements of the blood (i.e., *leukocytes*, *erythrocytes* and *platelets*).

[3]

### hemolytic anemia

*Anemia* resulting from the lysis of *erythrocytes*.

### hemolytic plaque assay

See *antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay*.

### heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)

Most frequent *antibody*-mediated drug-induced *thrombocytopenia*, which occurs in 1-2 % of patients treated with heparin intravenously for longer than four days.

*Note:* This disease is mediated by antibodies to complexes formed between



1  
2  
3 heparin and the endogenous *platelet* factor 4 (PF4).

4 [1]

5  
6  
7 **hereditary angioneurotic edema**

8 Clinical name for a genetic deficiency of the *C1 inhibitor* of the *complement system*.

9 *Note:* In the absence of C1 inhibitor, spontaneous activation of the complement  
10 system can cause diffuse fluid leakage from blood vessels, the most serious  
11 consequence of which is epiglottal swelling leading to suffocation.

12 [2]

13  
14  
15 **heteroantigen**

16 heterogenetic antigen

17 One of a set of identical or similar *cross-reacting antigens* shared by several species  
18 (e.g., *Forssman antigen*). *Antibodies* produced against one of these antigens will also  
19 react with the other antigens of the set even though these are derived from a different  
20 species; such antibodies are also called *heterophile antibodies*.

21 After [20]

22  
23  
24 **heterologous antibody**

25 *Antibody* derived from another individual of the same species or another species.

26 See also *autologous antibody*.

27 After [21]

28  
29  
30 **heterologous antigen**

31 *Antigen* that reacts with an *antibody* other than the one whose formation it induced.

32  
33  
34 **heterophagy**

35 Digestion of exogenous material taken up by a cell by *phagocytosis* or *pinocytosis*,  
36 following fusion of the phagocytic or pinocytic vacuole with a *lysosome*.

37  
38  
39 **heterophile antibody**

40 heterophilic antibody

41 *Antibody* raised against an *antigen* from one species, which also reacts against  
42 antigens from other species.

43 *Note 1:* Heterophile antibodies are usually of low affinity and are a common cause  
44 of problems with *immunoassays*.

45 *Note 2:* The existence of such antibodies explains observations of the presence of  
46 antibody against antigens from a variety of species without *immunization*.

47 *Note 3:* Heterophile antibodies commonly arise from viral infection.

48 See also *Forssman antigen*.

49  
50  
51 **heterophile antigen**

52 heterophilic antigen

53 *Antigen* that stimulates production in a vertebrate of *antibodies* capable of reacting with  
54 tissue components having related antigens in a wide range of other species.

55 See also *Forssman antigen*.

**heterozygous**

Possessing different *alleles* at a given locus on the two homologous chromosomes.

[3]

**high endothelial venule (HEV)**

Specialized venule in *lymphoid tissues* that has walls permeable to migrating *lymphocytes*, allowing them to move from blood into the lymphoid tissues.

**highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)**

Approach to the treatment of *acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)* patients involving a combination of nucleoside analogs, which prevent reverse transcription, with drugs that inhibit responses to the virus.

After [2]

**high-mobility group box (HMGB) protein**

Any of a group of universal sensors of nucleic acids, required for the induction of transmembrane and cytoplasmic receptor-mediated *innate immune responses*.

After [22]

**hinge region**

Amino acids between the *Fab* and *Fc* regions of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* that permit flexibility of the molecule.

[3]

**histamine**

2-(1H-imidazol-4-yl)ethan-1-amine

Amine derived from histidine by decarboxylation and released from cells in the *immune system*, especially *mast cells*, as part of an *allergic* reaction.

*Note:* It is a powerful stimulant of gastric secretion, constrictor of bronchial smooth muscle, and vasodilator.

[5]

**histaminosis**

*Histamine intolerance*, which may contribute to food intolerance as part of a *pseudoallergic reaction*.

**histocompatibility**

Relationship between a tissue or organ donor and a recipient who have sufficient similarity in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) antigens* to avoid *rejection* of a *graft*.

**histoincompatibility**

Relationship between a tissue or organ donor and a recipient who have sufficient differences in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) antigens* to cause *rejection* of a *graft*.

**hives**

nettle rash

urticaria

Vascular reaction pattern of the skin marked by the transient appearance of smooth, slightly elevated patches (*wheals*) that are either more red or more pale than the surrounding skin and are accompanied by severe itching.

*Note:* They are usually, but not always, caused by an *allergic* reaction to food or to a drug, but can also be induced by physical stimuli such as cold or exercise.

**Hodgkin disease**

Hodgkin lymphoma

*Immune system* tumor characterized by large cells called *Reed-Sternberg cells* that derive from mutated B-lineage cells.

*Note:* Hodgkin disease exists in at least two forms, Hodgkin lymphoma and nodular sclerosis.

[2]

**homing**

Movement of *leukocytes* to specific locations in the body.

**homing receptor**

Cell surface molecule that directs *leukocytes* to specific locations in the body.

[3]

**homocytotropic antibody**

*Antibody* that binds preferentially to cells from the same species rather than to cells from other species.

After [21]

See also *autologous antibody*, *heterologous antibody*, *heterophile antibody*.

**homozygous**

Possessing the same *allele* at a given locus on the two homologous chromosomes.

[3]

**horror autotoxicus**

Term (Latin: dread of self-poisoning) introduced by Paul Ehrlich (1902), to describe the body's innate aversion to immunological self-destruction.

**host** (in immunology)

Recipient of foreign cells or tissue, or of an infectious agent.

**host defense**

Ability of an individual to resist invasion by opportunistic agents and production of disease associated with exposure to microorganisms, foreign tissue, and particulates, as well as certain types of neoplasia. Host defense may be either nonspecific (*innate* or

1  
2  
3 *natural immunity*) or specific (*adaptive* or *acquired immunity*) in nature.

4 *Note:* Immunological defense may involve *chemotaxis*, *phagocytosis*, reaction  
5 with *immunoglobulins (Ig)* and (or) with *complement*, and *T cell cytotoxicity*.  
6  
7

### 8 **host-resistance assay**

9 Evaluation of *host resistance* in rodents to *in vivo challenge* with an infectious organism  
10 under normal conditions and after pharmacological and nutritional alterations of the  
11 *immune system*.  
12

### 13 **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**

14 Causative agent of *acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)*.  
15

16 *Note 1:* HIV is a retrovirus of the lentivirus family that selectively infects  
17 *macrophages* and *CD4+ T cells*, leading to their slow depletion, eventually  
18 resulting in *immunodeficiency*.  
19

20 *Note 2:* There are two major strains of the virus, HIV-1 and HIV-2, of which HIV-1  
21 causes most disease worldwide. HIV-2 is endemic to West Africa but is  
22 spreading.  
23

24 [2]

### 25 **humanized antibody**

26 Genetically engineered *monoclonal antibody* of non-human origin in which all but the  
27 *antigen-binding complementarity determining region (CDR)* sequences have been  
28 replaced with sequences derived from human antibodies.  
29

30 *Note:* This procedure is carried out to minimize the *immunogenicity of therapeutic,*  
31 *monoclonal antibodies*.  
32

33 [3]

### 34 **human leukocyte antigen (HLA)**

35 *Antigen* coded by genes of the human *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*.  
36

37 *Note 1:* Human HLA-A, -B and -C (resembling mouse H-2K, D and L) are *MHC*  
38 *class I* molecules, whereas HLA-DP, -DQ and -DR (resembling mouse I-A  
39 and I-E) are *MHC class II* molecules.  
40

41 *Note 2:* The genes for HLAs are situated on chromosome 6.  
42

43 After [1]

### 44 **human leukocyte antigen (HLA) polymorphism**

45 Discontinuous genetic variation in the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* that  
46 results in the occurrence of several different forms of MHC molecules among people.  
47

48 *Note:* Specific HLA polymorphisms are associated with a number of diseases, e.g.,  
49 HLA-B27 is associated with ankylosing spondylitis, psoriatic arthritis,  
50 *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, etc., and some chemical sensitivities.  
51  
52

### 53 **human leukocyte antigen (HLA) type I**

54 Molecules that enable the body to recognize infected cells and tumor cells and destroy  
55 them with *cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL)*.  
56

57 *Note:* HLA type I molecules are made by all nucleated cells in the body, possess a  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 deep groove (see *peptide-binding groove*) that can bind peptide *epitopes*,  
4 typically 8-11 amino acids long, from endogenous *antigens*; and present  
5 HLA type I/peptide complexes to *CD8+ lymphocytes* that have a  
6 complementary shaped *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.  
7  
8

### 9 **human leukocyte antigen (HLA) type II**

10 Molecules that enable *CD4+ lymphocytes* to recognize *epitopes* of exogenous *antigens*  
11 and discriminate self from *non-self*.  
12

13 *Note:* HLA type II molecules are made by *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*, such as  
14 *dendritic cells*, *macrophages*, and *B lymphocytes*, possess a deep groove  
15 (see *peptide-binding groove*) that can bind peptide *epitopes*, typically 10-30  
16 amino acids long but with an optimum length of 12-16 amino acids, from  
17 exogenous antigens; and present HLA type II/peptide complexes to *CD4+*  
18 *lymphocytes* that have a complementary shaped *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.  
19

### 20 **humoral**

21 Pertaining to extracellular fluid such as *plasma* and *lymph*.  
22

23 *Note:* The term *humoral immunity* is used to denote *antibody-mediated immune*  
24 *responses* such as *phagocytosis* and activation of the *complement system*.  
25

26 Modified from [3]  
27

### 28 **humoral immune response**

29 *Immune response* in which specific *antibodies* induce the effector functions (such as  
30 *phagocytosis* and activation of the *complement system*).  
31

32 [1]  
33

### 34 **humoral immunity**

35 Specific *immune response* that is mediated primarily by humoral factors circulating in  
36 solution in the *blood plasma* and *lymph* (i.e., *antibodies* and *complement*).  
37

38 *Note:* The induction of the *humoral immune response* generally requires the  
39 cooperation of cellular immune mechanisms.  
40

### 41 **humorally-mediated immunity (HMI)**

42 See *humoral immunity*.  
43  
44

### 45 **hybridoma**

46 Hybrid cell line obtained by fusing a lymphoid tumor cell with a *lymphocyte*. The  
47 resultant cell line has both the immortality of the tumor cell and the effector function  
48 (e.g., *monoclonal antibody* secretion) of the lymphocyte.  
49

50 [3]  
51

### 52 **hygiene hypothesis**

53 See *counter-regulation hypothesis*.  
54

### 55 **hypergammaglobulinemia**

56 Increase of *gammaglobulins* in the blood by paraproteinemia or increased production of  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *immunoglobulins (Ig).*

4 [1]

5  
6  
7 **hyperimmunoglobulin E syndrome**

8 Job syndrome

9 Rare *primary immunodeficiency* syndrome characterized by recurrent severe  
10 staphylococcal skin abscesses (hence Job syndrome), lung infections, and markedly  
11 elevated *serum immunoglobulin E (IgE)* levels.

12  
13  
14 **hyperimmunoglobulin M syndrome (HIGM)**

15 Primary *T cell* defect due to mutations in the *CD40 ligand (CD40L)*, characterized by  
16 recurrent (opportunistic) infections and very low levels of *immunoglobulin G (IgG)* and  
17 *immunoglobulin A (IgA)*.

18 *Note: Autoimmune* manifestations (e.g., *cytopenia, arthritis, sclerosing cholangitis*)  
19 are often seen.

20 After [1]

21  
22  
23 **hyperreactivity**

24 Abnormally increased response to a stimulus.

25 [4]

26  
27  
28 **hypersensitivity**

29 State in which an individual reacts with *allergic* effects following exposure to a certain  
30 substance (*allergen*) after having been exposed previously to the same substance. It is  
31 sometimes used loosely for any increased response.

32 *Note: Four types of hypersensitivity are recognized. Most common chemically*  
33 *induced allergies are type I [immunoglobulin E- (IgE-) mediated] and type IV*  
34 *(cell-mediated) hypersensitivity.*

35 See also *allergy, Gell and Coombs classification.*

36 After [5]

37  
38  
39 **hypersensitivity pneumonitis (HPS)**

40 extrinsic allergic alveolitis

41 Immune-mediated inflammatory disease of the lung parenchyma caused by exposure to  
42 an inhaled chemical *allergen* or organic dust.

43 [4]

44  
45  
46  
47 **hypersensitization**

48 Development of excessive immune reactivity to an *antigen*.

49  
50  
51 **hypersusceptibility**

52 Adverse immunological effects in an individual occurring under conditions of exposure  
53 to an *allergen* that result in no effects in the great majority of the population, or an  
54 individual exhibiting exaggerated effects in comparison with the great majority of those  
55 showing some adverse effects.

56 After [4]

**hypervariable region**

Amino acid sequence within the *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) regions* that shows the greatest variability and contributes most to the *antigen* or *peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* binding site.  
[3]

**hypogammaglobulinemia**

*Immunodeficiency* state marked by abnormally low levels of all classes of *immunoglobulins (Ig)*, associated with increased susceptibility to infectious diseases.

*Note:* It may be primary (inherited), or secondary (acquired), or it may occur physiologically in normal *neonates*.

**hyposensitization therapy**

Dermal application of a selected *allergen* to an *allergic* person in stepwise increasing dosage, with the aim of reducing the *immune system's* tendency for the corresponding *allergic reaction*.

**Ia antigen**

I region-associated antigen

immune response-associated antigen

*Isoantigen* encoded by the Ia region of the mouse *major histocompatibility complex (H-2 complex)*.

*Note 1:* Ia *antigens* are defined by serological methods (see *serology*) and are found predominantly on *B lymphocytes* and *macrophages*.

*Note 2:* This term is also used as a generic term for any *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II* antigen.

See also *immune response-associated (Ia) protein*.

**idiopathic**

Term that describes a "primary" symptom or disease in which no underlying cause or associated disorder can be found.

*Note:* In many cases, *autoimmune* processes are involved in the pathogenesis [e.g., idiopathic *Addison disease*, idiopathic *thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)*].

**idiopathic environmental intolerance**

See *multiple chemical sensitivity*.

**idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)**

*Thrombocytopenia* of unknown cause, probably related to the production of anti-*platelet* antibodies, and leading to bruising (*purpura*).

**idiosyncratic drug reaction (IDR)**

Rare and unpredictable *adverse drug reaction* occurring only in susceptible individuals.

*Note:* A dose-reponse relationship may not be apparent within the dose range

1  
2  
3 used clinically.  
4  
5

### 6 **idiotope**

7 *Epitope* made up of amino acids within the *variable (V) region* of an *antibody* or *T-cell*  
8 *receptor (TCR)* that reacts with an anti-idiotope antibody.

9 After [3]

10 *Note:* The anti-idiotopic region of the anti-idiotope antibody may mimic the epitope-  
11 binding characteristics of the *antigen* without sharing any sequence  
12 homology.

13 See also *anti-idiotypic antibody*, *idiotype*.  
14  
15

### 16 **idiotype**

17 The combined *antigenic determinants (idiotopes)* expressed in the *variable (V) region* of  
18 *immunoglobulins (Ig)* of an individual that determine *antibody* specificity to a particular  
19 *antigen*.

20 See also *anti-idiotypic antibody*.

21 After [2, 102]  
22  
23

### 24 **idiotype network**

25 idiotypic network

26 Regulatory network based on interactions of *anti-idiotypic antibodies* and *idiotypes*  
27 present on *antibodies* and *T-cell receptors (TCR)*, resulting in feedback inhibition of  
28 ongoing *B cell* or *T cell* responses.

29 After [1, 3]  
30  
31

### 32 **immature** (in immunology)

33 Describing cells that are not fully developed and unable to participate immediately in an  
34 *immune response*.

35 *Note:* Immature *B cells* and *T cells* migrate from their *primary lymphoid sites (bone*  
36 *marrow* and *thymus)* through the vascular and *lymphatic systems* to  
37 *secondary lymphoid sites*. These sites include the *spleen*, *lymph nodes*,  
38 *tonsils*, and *Peyer's patches* in the intestine and *appendix*. The immature B  
39 cells and T cells mature only after they encounter an *antigen*.  
40  
41  
42

### 43 **immediate-type hypersensitivity**

44 immediate-type allergy

45 type I hypersensitivity

46 Reaction provoked by re-exposure to an *antigen (allergen)* that causes *plasma cells* to  
47 secrete *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* which binds to *Fc receptors* on the surface of tissue  
48 *mast cells* and blood *basophils*, sensitizing them, so that later exposure to the same  
49 allergen cross-links the bound IgE, leading to *degranulation* and the secretion of  
50 pharmacologically active mediators such as *histamine*, *leukotriene*, and *prostaglandin*  
51 that act immediately on the surrounding tissues.

52 *Note:* The principal effects of these products are vasodilation and smooth-muscle  
53 contraction. The reaction may be either local or *systemic*. Symptoms vary  
54 from mild irritation to sudden death from *anaphylactic shock*.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



**immune adherence**

Attachment of particulate *antigen* coated with C3b (see *complement*) to cells expressing C3b *receptors*, which results in enhanced *phagocytosis* of bacteria by *macrophages*.  
After [7]

**immune complex**

Product of an *antigen-antibody* reaction, which may also contain components of the *complement system*.  
[5]

**immune complex disease**

Illness resulting from deposition of *antigen-antibody* complexes in tissues.

**immune deviation**

Regulatory mechanism of the preferential activation of one aspect (cellular or humoral) of the *adaptive immune system* at the expense of the other.

*Note:* Although not a form of true *tolerance*, this regulatory mechanism may be involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

**immune elimination**

Removal of pathogens or tumor cells by the immune system; the first step of *immunoediting* of tumors.

**immune enhancement**

Therapeutic stimulation of the *immune response*, especially in tumor therapy.

**immune equilibrium**

State in carcinogenesis where there is an equilibrium between elimination of tumor cells by the *immune system* and growth of non-*immunogenic* tumor cells; the second step in *immunoediting*.

**immune escape**

Biological feature of an infectious agent or of a tumor cell that prevents its elimination by the *immune system*. Such a feature can be acquired by a selection process. Immune escape is the third step in *immunoediting* of tumors.

**immune evasion**

Property of a pathogen that results in avoidance of attack by the *immune system*, e.g., because of reduced *phagocytosis*, lack of recognition by the *innate immune system*, or *suppression* of the *immune response*.

**immune modulation**

immunomodulation

Alteration of the *immune response* to alleviate harmful effects of the *immune system* or

1  
2  
3 to promote its activity by changes in regulatory factors; often part of deliberate  
4 therapeutic intervention.  
5  
6

### 7 **immune regulation**

8 immunoregulation

9 Capacity of the *immune system* to regulate itself so that an *immune response* does not  
10 become excessive and cause tissue damage, *autoimmune* reactions, or *allergic*  
11 *reactions*.  
12

13 [2]  
14

### 15 **immune reserve hypothesis**

16 Hypothesis that the *immune response* involves multiple redundancies that are capable  
17 of compensating for acute reductions in certain immune functions.  
18

19 *Note:* Such a reserve might prevent a serious reduction in *host resistance* after  
20 temporary *immunosuppression* of selected parameters [e.g., *natural killer*  
21 (*NK*) *cell* function].  
22

### 23 **immune response**

24 Selective reaction of the body to substances that are foreign to it, or that the *immune*  
25 *system* identifies as foreign, shown by the production of *antibodies* and antibody-  
26 bearing cells or by a cell-mediated *hypersensitivity* reaction.  
27

28 [5]

29 See also *cell-mediated immune response*.  
30  
31

### 32 **immune response-associated (Ia) protein**

33 Protein found in *antigen-presenting cells (APC)* and *B lymphocytes* in mice.

34 Compare *Ia antigen*.  
35  
36

### 37 **immune response genes**

38 Genes, including those within the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*, that together  
39 determine the overall level of *immune response* to a given *antigen*.  
40

41 [3]  
42

### 43 **immune surveillance**

44 immunosurveillance

45 Recognition, and in some cases elimination, of tumor cells by the *immune system*  
46 before they become clinically detectable.  
47

48 [2]  
49

### 50 **immune system**

51 Integrated network of organs, glands, and tissues that has evolved to protect the body  
52 from foreign substances, including bacteria, viruses, and other infection-causing  
53 parasites and pathogens.

54 *Note:* The immune system may produce *hypersensitivity* reactions that, in the  
55 extreme, can be fatal. If the immune system misidentifies normal body  
56 components as foreign, this leads to *autoimmune* disorders, such as  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3                    *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, in which the body destroys its own  
4 constituents.  
5

6 [5]  
7

8 **immune thrombocytopenic purpura**

9 See *thrombocytopenic purpura, idiopathic (ITP)*.  
10

11 **immunity**

12 Inherited, acquired, or induced *resistance* to infection by a specific pathogen.  
13

14 **immunization**

15 Making an organism immune to a specific agent, such as an *allergen*, pathogen, or  
16 cancer cell.  
17

18 See also *active immunization, passive immunization*.  
19

20 **immunoactivation**

21 Activation of the *immune system* as a whole to react more rapidly to *antigens*.  
22

23 **immunoactivator**

24 Substance that activates the *immune system* as a whole to react more rapidly to  
25 *antigens*.  
26

27 **immunoadsorption**

28 Method for removal of *antibody* or *antigen* by allowing it to bind to a corresponding  
29 antigen or antibody immobilized in the solid phase.  
30

31 After [3]  
32

33 **immunoassay**

34 *Ligand-binding* assay that uses a specific *antigen* or *antibody*, capable of binding to the  
35 analyte, to identify and quantify substances. The antibody can be linked to a  
36 radioisotope [*radioimmunoassay (RIA)*] or to an enzyme that catalyzes an easily  
37 monitored reaction [*enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)*], or to a highly  
38 fluorescent compound by which the location of an antigen can be visualized  
39 (*immunofluorescence*).  
40

41 [5]  
42

43 **immunoblot**

44 Supporting substrate [often a nitrocellulose, nylon, or poly(vinylidene fluoride)  
45 membrane] onto which proteins that have been separated by gel electrophoresis are  
46 transferred and then identified by the binding of specific *antibodies*.  
47

48 See also *immunoblotting*.  
49

50 **immunoblotting**

51 western blotting

52 Technique for the detection, isolation, and quantitative measurement of specific  
53 immunoreactive polypeptides, separated into bands by polyacrylamide gel  
54

1  
2  
3 electrophoresis, after which the bands are transferred from the gel to a membrane  
4 (*immunoblot*), followed by immunological detection of the immobilized *antigen* by the  
5 binding of specific *antibodies* typically labeled with peroxidase or radioactivity.  
6  
7

### 8 **immunochemistry**

9 Study of biochemical and molecular aspects of *immunology*, especially the nature of  
10 *antibodies*, *antigens*, and their interactions.  
11

12 [5]  
13

### 14 **immunocompeten/ce** (n), /t (adj)

15 Having the ability to exhibit an immune response.  
16

### 17 **immunocompromised**

18 Unable to mount a full or effective *immune response*.  
19

### 20 **immunocytochemistry**

21 See *immunohistochemistry*.  
22  
23

### 24 **immunoconjugate**

25 antibody conjugate

26 *Antibody* or antibody fragment to which a functional molecule, such as a drug, has been  
27 chemically linked.  
28

29 See also *immunocytokine*.  
30

### 31 **immunocytokine**

32 *Antibody* or antibody fragment to which a *cytokine* has been chemically linked.  
33

34 *Note:* Such a construct may be used to direct a cytokine to its target cell.  
35

### 36 **immunodeficien/cy** (n), /t (adj)

37 Inability to produce a normal repertoire of *antibodies* or immunologically sensitized *T*  
38 *lymphocytes*, especially in response to specific *antigens*.  
39

40 *Note 1:* Defects in one or more components of the *immune system* result in the  
41 inability to eliminate or neutralize antigens.

42 *Note 2:* Congenital or primary immunodeficiencies are genetic or due to  
43 developmental disorders, such as congenital *thymic aplasia* (see also  
44 *thymic atrophy*).  
45

46 *Note 3:* Acquired or secondary immunodeficiencies develop as a consequence of  
47 malnutrition, malignancies, *immunosuppressive* compounds, radiation or  
48 infection of *immunocompetent T lymphocytes* with *human immunodeficiency*  
49 *virus (HIV)*.  
50

51 *Note 4:* Defects in *natural immunity* may also result in immunodeficiency.  
52

53 Modified from [4]  
54

### 55 **immunodominant epitope**

56 *Epitope* in an *antigen* that is preferentially recognized by *T cells*, which then come to  
57 dominate the *immune response*.  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 After [2]  
4  
5

### immunodysregulation–polyendocrinopathy–enteropathy, X-linked

6 IPEX syndrome

7 X-linked syndrome characterized by immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy  
8 (*diabetes mellitus type 1, thyroiditis, hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, dermatitis,*  
9 and enteropathy, caused by mutations in the gene encoding *Foxp3*.  
10  
11

12 [1]  
13

### immunoediting

14 Process of continuing *immunosuppression* of *immunogenic* tumor cells, which may  
15 finally result in the selection of non-immunogenic tumor cells. It consists of the steps  
16 *immune elimination, immune equilibrium* and *immune escape*.  
17  
18

### immunofluorescence

19 Technique for detection of cell- or tissue-associated *antigens* by the use of a  
20 fluorescently tagged *ligand*, e.g., an anti-*immunoglobulin (Ig) conjugated to fluorescein*  
21 *isothiocyanate (FITC)*.  
22  
23

24 [3]  
25  
26

### immunogen

27 Any substance that elicits an *immune response*.

28 *Note 1: Whilst all immunogens are antigens, not all antigens are immunogens.*

29 See also *hapten*.

30 After [3, 4]  
31  
32  
33

### immunoglobulin (Ig)

34 Member of a glycoprotein family to which *antibodies* and *B-cell receptors (BCR)*  
35 belong.  
36

37 *Note 1: Immunoglobulins bind to substances in the body that are recognized as*  
38 *foreign antigens (often proteins on the surface of bacteria and viruses).*

39 *Note 2: Immunoglobulins also play a central role in allergies when they bind to*  
40 *antigens that are not otherwise a threat to health and provoke an*  
41 *inflammatory reaction.*  
42

43 See also *immunoglobulins A, D, E, G, and M*.  
44  
45

### immunoglobulin A (IgA)

46 Class of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* characterized by  $\alpha$  *heavy chains*.

47 *Note: IgA antibodies are secreted mainly by mucosal lymphoid tissues, and in the*  
48 *dimeric form are present in mucosal secretions. IgA in the monomeric form*  
49 *is present in blood.*  
50  
51

52 After [2]  
53  
54

### immunoglobulin D (IgD)

55 Class of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* characterized by  $\delta$  *heavy chains*.

56 *Note: It appears as a surface immunoglobulin on mature naïve B cells (see naïve*  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *lymphocyte*) but its function is unknown.

4 After [2]

5  
6  
7 **immunoglobulin E (IgE)**

8 Class of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* characterized by  $\epsilon$  *heavy chains*.

9 *Note:* It is involved in the defense against parasite infections and in *allergic*  
10 *reactions*.

11 After [2]

12  
13  
14 **immunoglobulin Y (IgY)**

15 *Immunoglobulin (Ig)* found in chickens.

16  
17  
18 **immunoglobulin E (IgE)-binding Fc receptors**

19 High-affinity IgE-binding *Fc- $\epsilon$ -R* type I *receptors* are expressed on *mast cells* and  
20 *basophils* and interact with IgE *antibodies* with high affinity.

21 *Note 1:* The cross-linking of these receptors results in release of mediators such as  
22 *histamine*.

23  
24 *Note 2:* The receptors are composed of  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  chains; the  $\alpha$  chain contains the  
25 IgE binding site, while the  $\gamma$  chain is responsible for *signal transduction*.

26 *Note 3:* The low-affinity IgE binding *Fc receptor (CD23)* is expressed on *B cells*,  
27 and its soluble (truncated) form is generated by proteolytic cleavage and  
28 regulates IgE production by B cells.

29 After [4]

30  
31  
32 **immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated hypersensitivity**

33 State in which an individual reacts with *allergic* effects caused fundamentally by the  
34 reaction of *antigen-specific immunoglobulin E (IgE)* following exposure to a certain  
35 substance (*allergen*) after having been exposed previously to the same substance.

36 [5]

37  
38  
39 **immunoglobulin G (IgG)**

40 Class of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* characterized by  $\gamma$  *heavy chains*.

41 *Note:* It is the most abundant class of immunoglobulin found in the *plasma*.

42 After [2]

43  
44  
45 **immunoglobulin M (IgM)**

46 Class of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* characterized by  $\mu$  *heavy chains*.

47 *Note 1:* It is the first immunoglobulin to appear on the surface of *B cells* and the  
48 first to be secreted.

49 After [2]

50 *Note 2:* Unlike other immunoglobulins that that exist in the monomeric (*IgA*, *IgD*,  
51 *IgE*, and *IgG*) or dimeric (*IgA*) state, IgM is found in the blood as a  
52 pentamer.  
53  
54

55  
56 **immunoglobulin gene superfamily**

57 Genes encoding proteins containing one or more *immunoglobulin (Ig)* *domains*  
58  
59  
60

(homology units) that are homologous to either Ig *variable (V) region* or *constant (C) region* domains. Cell surface and soluble molecules mediating recognition, adhesion, or binding functions in and outside the *immune system*, derived from the same precursor, belong to this family of molecules (e.g., immunoglobulin, *T cell receptor (TCR)*, *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and class II molecules*, *CD4*, *CD8*, and *Fc $\gamma$ R*).  
[1]

### **immunoglobulin superfamily**

Large family of proteins characterized by possession of 'immunoglobulin-type' domains of approximately 110 amino acids folded into two  $\beta$ -pleated sheets. Members include *immunoglobulins A, E, G, M (IgA, IgE, IgG, and IgM)*, *T-cell receptors (TCR)*, and *human leukocyte antigen (HLA) major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*. See also *human leukocyte antigen (HLA)*, *immunoglobulin (Ig)*, *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule*.  
[3]

### **immunohistochemistry**

Detection of cell-associated molecules in the light microscope with *antibodies* labeled with enzymes that change a substrate into a colored precipitate.

### **immunological ignorance**

Absence of a pathogenic *autoimmune* response in spite of the concomitant presence in the *host* of the *autoantigen* and *T cells* bearing the specific autoreactive *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.

### **immunological incompetence**

Inability of the *immune system* to function in a normal fashion.

### **immunologically privileged site**

Any of various sites in the body where foreign tissue *grafts* do not induce an immune reaction.

*Note:* Such sites include the eye, brain, testis, and unborn fetus. Although *antigens* do migrate from these privileged sites, they either induce *immunological tolerance* or a nondestructive response.

### **immunological memory**

immunological anamnesis

*Ability of the immune system to respond faster and more effectively to subsequent exposures to an antigen following a primary immune response to the same antigen.*

*Note:* Typically *memory T cells* appear five days following initial immunization, whereas *memory B cells* may take about a month to reach maximum levels. Populations of such cells may persist for the lifetime of the individual.

### **immunological synapse**

Contact point between the *T-cell* and *antigen-presenting cell (APC)* that is generated by reorganization and clustering of cell surface molecules in *lipid rafts*. The synapse

1  
2  
3 facilitates interactions between *T-cell receptor (TCR)* and *major histocompatibility*  
4 *complex (MHC) molecules*, and between *adhesion molecules*, thereby potentiating a  
5 TCR-mediated activation signal.  
6

7 [3]  
8

### 9 **immunological tolerance**

10 Persistent specific immunological unresponsiveness toward a substance that would  
11 normally be expected to elicit an *immune response*, resulting from previous non-  
12 sensitizing exposure to an *antigen*.  
13

14 *Note:* Tolerance to specific foreign antigens can be induced by the exposure to the  
15 foreign antigens during embryonic or neonatal life (depending upon  
16 species). In adults, tolerance (usually of shorter duration) can be induced by  
17 using particular routes of administration for the antigens or administration of  
18 agents that are particularly effective against cells proliferating in response to  
19 antigen. Mechanisms may include deletion of potentially reactive  
20 *lymphocytes* or their “inactivation” by immunological *suppression*.  
21

22 Modified from [3, 20]  
23

### 24 **immunology**

25 Science that deals with the *immune system* including *cell-mediated immunity (CMI)* and  
26 *humoral* aspects of *immunity* and *immune responses*.  
27  
28

### 29 **immunomagnetic separation**

30 Method of separating specific cell types or macromolecules with the aid of cell-specific  
31 *antibodies* coupled to paramagnetic beads.  
32  
33

### 34 **immunomodulation**

35 Modification of the functioning of the *immune system* by the action of a substance that  
36 increases or reduces the ability to produce an *immune response*.  
37

38 After [5]  
39

### 40 **immunopathology**

41 Study of diseases of the *immune system*. The occurrence of such diseases.  
42  
43

### 44 **immunopathy**

45 Disease of the *immune system*.

46 See also *immunopathology*.  
47

### 48 **immunopharmacology**

- 49 1. Study of the *immune system* using drugs as diagnostic tools.  
50 2. Use of pharmaceutical molecules to support and stimulate the immune system in  
51 patients with *immunodeficiency*, or to suppress or specifically influence the reactivity of  
52 the immune system in order to control a pathological immune reaction or disease.  
53  
54

### 55 **immunophenotyping**

56  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 Use of a panel of *antibodies* to determine a subset of proteins expressed on the surface  
4 of a cell or heterogeneous group of cells, often for diagnostic purposes, e.g., identifying  
5 the presence of *leukemia* cells in a population of *lymphocytes*.  
6  
7

### 8 **immunophilin**

9 Any of a group of cytoplasmic proteins in *T cells* that are targets of the  
10 *immunosuppressant* drugs cyclosporin A, tacrolimus (fujimycin), rapamycin, and related  
11 compounds.  
12

13 See also Annex II for specific substances.  
14

### 15 **immunopotential**

16 Enhancement of the capacity of the *immune system* to produce an effective response.  
17 [5]  
18  
19

### 20 **immunoprecipitate**

21 Precipitate formed in an *antigen-antibody* reaction.  
22

### 23 **immunoprecipitation**

24 Process of precipitating something by reaction with a specific *antibody* or *antigen*.  
25  
26

### 27 **immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)**

28 Consensus sequence for src-family *tyrosine kinases*, found in the cytoplasmic domains  
29 of several signaling molecules including the *signal transduction* units of *lymphocyte*  
30 *antigen receptors* and of *Fc receptors*.  
31

32 [3]  
33

### 34 **immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM)**

35 Consensus sequence present in the cytoplasmic domains of certain cell surface  
36 molecules [e.g., Fc  $\gamma$  RIIb, inhibitory *natural killer (NK) cell receptors*] and which  
37 mediates inhibitory signals.  
38

39 [3]  
40

### 41 **immunosensitivity**

42 Reactivity to *antigens*.  
43  
44

### 45 **immunosensitizer**

46 Substance that makes the *immune system* more reactive to *antigens*.  
47  
48

### 49 **immunosorbent**

50 Solid matrix on to which a specific *antibody* or *antigen* is adsorbed and used to capture  
51 the corresponding antigen or antibody from solution.  
52

### 53 **immunostimulating complex (ISCOM)**

54 Immunological *adjuvant* composed of saponin, cholesterol, phospholipid, and an  
55 *immunogen*, usually protein.  
56

57 *Note:* The adjuvant was originally designed to form a *vaccine* delivery system that  
58  
59  
60

combined certain aspects of virus particles such as their size and orientation of surface proteins, with the powerful immunostimulatory activity of saponins.

After [23]

### **immunostimulation**

Increase in immune function, e.g., by use of *bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine* or drugs.

*Note:* Immunostimulation may be beneficial (e.g., restoration of a depressed *immune response*) or detrimental (e.g., induction by drugs of *allergy, hypersensitivity, or autoimmunity*).

### **immunosuppressant**

Substance that depresses the function of the *immune system*.

### **immunosuppression**

Depression of the normal functioning of the *immune system*.

*Note:* This may be due to:

- i. Inhibition of the normal response of the immune system to an *antigen*.
- ii. Prevention, by chemical or biological means, of the production of an *antibody* to an antigen by inhibition of the processes of transcription, translation, or formation of tertiary structure.

After [5]

### **immunosuppressive**

Causing depression of the normal function of the *immune system*.

### **immunosurveillance**

Mechanisms by which the *immune system* is able to recognize and destroy malignant cells before the formation of an overt tumor.

[5]

### **immunotherapy**

Treatment or prevention of a disease using agents that can modify the *immune response*.

*Note 1:* Immunotherapy is largely an experimental approach, applied most widely in the treatment of *leukemias, melanoma, and hypernephroma*.

*Note 2:* Immunotherapy may involve *active or passive immunization, immunopotentialiation or immunosuppression, hyposensitization, bone marrow transplantation, or thymus implantation*.

### **immunotoxic**

Harmful to the *immune system*.

[5]

### **immunotoxicant**

Substance that is harmful to the *immune system*.

### immunotoxicology

Discipline applying cardinal principals of both *immunology* and toxicology to study the ability of certain substances to alter the *immune response*.

### immunotoxin

Biochemical *conjugate*, or recombinant fusion protein, consisting of an immune targeting molecule such as an *antibody* or antibody fragment together with a *cytotoxic* molecule.

[3]

Compare *toxin*.

### inactivated vaccine

*Vaccine* formulated from the whole microorganism that has been rendered unable to reproduce or cause disease, often by mutation or heat denaturation.

See also *attenuated vaccine*.

### indirect antiglobulin test (IAT)

See *Coombs test*.

### indirect Coombs test

See *Coombs test*.

### indirect immunofluorescence

Method of visualizing an *antigen* in which an unlabeled *antibody* against the antigen is reacted with it first, and then is detected by staining with a second fluorescently tagged *immunoglobulin G (IgG)* directed against the first antibody.

### indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO)

Enzyme catalyzing the initial rate-limiting step of *tryptophan* degradation.

*Note 1:* Tryptophan is required for *T cell* proliferation. Local degradation of tryptophan thus modulates T cell activity.

### inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOS)

Highly specific *receptor* for the protein B7H/B7RP-1 that is expressed on the surface of *B cells* and *macrophages*, and also appears on the surface of *T cells* during the process of T-cell *activation*.

*Note:* Stimulation of the *B cell* and subsequent *antibody* production takes place after the ICOS *receptor* attaches to its partner B7RP-1 molecule. Thus, the co-stimulatory molecules, ICOS and B7H/B7RP-1, provide specificity for the *immune system* activation process.

### infectious tolerance

Continuing state of *tolerance* that can be transferred by *T lymphocytes* from a tolerant animal.

*Note:* Maintenance of *transplantation* tolerance involves the induction of *antigen-specific CD4+ regulatory T cells (Treg)*.

After [24]

### **infertility, autoimmune**

Infertility caused by sperm *antibodies*, *autoimmune ovarian inflammation* (oophoritis), or autoimmune orchitis.

*Note:* This disease may be part of a polyendocrinopathy.

[1]

### **inflammasome**

High molecular weight complex that activates inflammatory *caspases* and the *cytokines interleukin-1 $\beta$*  (IL-1 $\beta$ ) and IL-18.

*Note:* There appear to be at least three types of inflammasomes. Those identified initially were the NALP1 inflammasome, the *NALP3 (cryopyrin)* inflammasome, and the *interleukin- (IL-)1  $\beta$*  converting enzyme (ICE) protease activating factor (IPAF) inflammasome.

[25]

See also *inflammation*.

### **inflammation**

Reaction of the body to injury or to infectious, *allergic*, or chemical irritation; characterized by redness, swelling, heat, and pain resulting from dilation of the blood vessels accompanied by loss of *plasma* and *leucocytes* into the tissues.

[5]

### **inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)**

Group of chronic inflammatory conditions resulting in the inappropriate and persistent activation of the *mucosal immune system* of the bowel.

*Note 1:* *Idiopathic* IBD is a set of chronic conditions probably driven by the presence of normal intestinal flora.

*Note 2:* *Autoantibodies* against proteins of *neutrophil granulocytes*, pancreatic acinus, intestinal goblet, and colonic epithelial cells are detectable.

*Note 3:* *Crohn disease* and ulcerative colitis are two variants of IBD with overlapping clinical manifestations and probable *autoimmune* origins. Crohn disease is immunologically characterized by antibody to *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Th1 cell*-dominated responses.

After [1, 19]

### **inflammatory response**

See *inflammation*.

### **innate immunity**

*Immunity* that is not intrinsically affected by prior contact with *antigen*, i.e., all aspects of immunity not directly mediated by *lymphocytes*.

[3]

**insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)**

See *diabetes mellitus type 1*.

**integrin**

Member of a family of heterodimeric *adhesion molecules*, mediating attachment of the cell to other cells or to the extracellular matrix, and thereby signaling information to the cell about its surroundings.

**intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)**

Member of the *immunoglobulin superfamily* that interacts with *integrins* and is found on the surface of several cell types, including *antigen-presenting cells (APC)* and *T cells*.

**interclonal competition**

Process which favors survival of foreign-specific *lymphocytes* at the expense of self-specific lymphocytes and is a secondary mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

**interdigitating dendritic cell**

See *dendritic cell*.

**interferon (IFN)**

Any of a group of glycoproteins that are produced by cells in response to stimuli, such as exposure to a virus, bacterium, parasite, or other *antigen*, and that prevent viral replication in newly infected cells and, in some cases, modulate specific cellular functions.

*Note 1:* There are three classes:  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ . Alpha interferon (IFN- $\alpha$ ) is made by *lymphocytes* and *macrophages*. Beta interferon (IFN- $\beta$ ) is synthesized by *fibroblasts* and epithelial cells. Alpha and beta interferons were once called type 1 interferon. Gamma interferon [see  *$\gamma$ -interferon (IFN- $\gamma$ )*], also called type 2 interferon, is synthesized by lymphocytes.

*Note 2:* All three interferon classes can be induced during viral infection. They have antiviral and antiproliferative effects, and all induce expression of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*.

**interleukin (IL)**

Member of a group of immunoregulatory glycoproteins, also called *lymphokines*, *monokines*, or *cytokines*.

*Note 1:* General features are low relative molecular mass (about 80 kDa) and frequent glycosylation; regulation of immune cell function and *inflammation* by binding to specific cell surface *receptors*; transient and local production; action in *paracrine*, *autocrine*, or endocrine manner, with stimulatory or blocking effect on growth/differentiation; very potent, function at picomolar concentrations.

*Note 2:* Interleukins represent an extensive series of mediators with a wide range

of overlapping functions. Other mediators in this series are *c-kit ligand*, *interferons (IFN)*, *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*, *transforming growth factor  $\beta$  (TGF- $\beta$ )*, and a family of low relative molecular mass mediators, called *chemokines*.

Modified from [4]

### internal image

*Epitope* on an anti-*idiotype* that binds in a way that structurally and functionally mimics the *antigen*.

[3]

### intolerance (in immunology)

Extreme sensitivity or *allergy* to a drug, food, or other substance.

### intradermal test

Diagnostic test for a possible cause of *hypersensitivity* in an individual in which a small drop of *antigen* is placed on a scarified skin surface or injected intradermally.

*Note:* Production of an *immune response* in the treated skin represents a positive result.

### intra-epithelial lymphocyte (IEL)

*Lymphocyte* found in the epithelial layer of mammalian *mucosal* linings, such as those of the gastrointestinal and reproductive tracts.

### intrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)

Pathway of cell death initiated from within the cell, usually in response to signals following DNA damage, a defective cell cycle, detachment from the extracellular matrix, hypoxia, loss of cell survival factors, or other types of severe cell stress.

*Note:* This pathway involves the release of pro-*apoptotic* proteins from the mitochondria.

See also *apoptosis, extrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)*.

### invariant chain

CD74

Protein (31 kDa) of the endoplasmic reticulum lumen that binds to newly formed *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* heterodimeric proteins, preventing binding of endogenous peptides to their groove.

*Note:* This protein acts as a chaperone for these molecules until they leave the Golgi apparatus and enter the *endosome* pathway. It is degraded proteolytically but leaves a fragment (called CLIP) bound within the groove of the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class III molecules*. In acid vesicles, after leaving the Golgi apparatus, CLIP exchanges with peptides derived from exogenous *antigens*.

### IPEX syndrome

See *immunodysregulation–polyendocrinopathy–enteropathy, X-linked*.

**ir genes**

See *immune response genes*.

**islet cell antibodies (ICA)**

*Autoantibodies* reacting with endocrine (pancreatic islet) cells and detectable by *indirect immunofluorescence* on pancreatic cryostat sections.

*Note:* Islet cell antibodies are diagnostic markers of *diabetes mellitus type 1*.

**isoantigen**

See *alloantigen*.

**isograft**

syngraft

Tissue *transplanted* (see *graft*) between two genetically identical individuals.

**isohemagglutinin**

Naturally occurring *immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibody* specific for the *erythrocyte antigens* of the *ABO blood groups*, thought to result from *immunization* by bacteria in the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts.

After [7]

**isotype**

Class of *antibody* that differs from others in the *constant region* of the *heavy chain (Fc portion)*.

**isotype control**

*Antibody* exhibiting the non-specific characteristics of the antibody-*isotype* but lacking any specificity for the *antigen* in question; used as a negative control in antibody-antigen detection assays, notably in *flow cytometry*.

**isotype switch**

Process by which a *B cell* switches from making *antibody* of one *isotype* to another without altering the specificity of the antibody, producing an isotype with the same *variable (V) regions* but a different *heavy chain constant (C) region*.

**J chain**

See *joining (J) chain*.

**J gene**

See *joining (J) gene*.

**JAK/STAT signaling pathway**

Mechanism that transmits information from chemical signals outside the cell to gene promoters on the DNA in the cell nucleus. The mechanism is activated by the binding of *Janus-family tyrosine kinase (JAK)* to the nonpolypeptide portion of occupied

1  
2  
3 *receptors* for some *interleukins (IL)*. JAK phosphorylates signal transducer and activator  
4 of transcription (STAT) proteins apart from STAT 5a and 5b.

5 *Note*: JAK2 is activated after it binds occupied receptors for somatotropin, several  
6 *cytokines*, and leptin. It then phosphorylates STAT proteins, which dimerize  
7 and enter the nucleus to activate transcription of specific genes.  
8  
9

### 10 **JAM test**

11 Method which uses labeled nucleotide precursors to estimate DNA fragmentation during  
12 *cell-mediated cytotoxicity* or *apoptosis*.  
13  
14

### 15 **Janus-family tyrosine kinase (JAK)**

16 *Tyrosine kinase* activated by *cytokines* binding to cell *receptors*.  
17 See also *JAK/STAT signaling pathway*.  
18  
19

### 20 **Jerne plaque assay**

21 See *antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay*.  
22  
23

### 24 **joining (J) chain**

25 Polypeptide that forms part of the polymeric structure of pentameric *immunoglobulin M*  
26 (*IgM*) and dimeric *immunoglobulin A (IgA)*.  
27 After [3]  
28

### 29 **joining (J) gene**

30 Gene coding for a joining segment that connects *variable (V) regions* and *constant (C)*  
31 *regions* of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* chains that, upon gene  
32 rearrangement, encodes part of the third *hypervariable region* of the *antigen receptors*.  
33

34 *Note*: In *Ig light chains* and *TCR*, a *variable (V) gene* segment rearranges to a  
35 *joining (J) gene* segment; in *Ig heavy chains* and *TCR*, a *diversity (D) gene*  
36 segment rearranges to a joining (J) gene segment.  
37

38 See also *V(D)J recombination*.

39 Modified from [3, 7]  
40

### 41 **junctional diversity**

42 Diversity of the splice junctions in the recombined *variable (V) gene*, *diversity (D) gene*  
43 [for *immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy chains*, and for *TCR b* and *d chains*], and *joining (J)*  
44 *gene* segments of *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* genes.  
45 See also *D gene* and *V gene*.  
46

47 [3]  
48

### 49 **K cell**

50 See *killer cell*.  
51  
52

### 53 **kallikrein**

54 Any of a group of enzymes found in the blood and body fluids that acts on certain  
55 *plasma globulins* to produce *bradykinins*.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



**Kaposi sarcoma (KS)**

Form of skin cancer that can involve internal organs. It is most often found in patients with *acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)* and can be fatal.

**kappa ( $\kappa$ )-light chain**

Smaller of the two types of *light chain* found in human *immunoglobulins (Ig)*, the other type being a *lambda ( $\lambda$ )-light chain*.

See also *Bence Jones protein*.

**keratinocyte**

Epidermal cell that produces keratin.

**killer activatory receptor (KAR)**

killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor

*Receptor found on natural killer (NK) cells, and some  $\gamma:\delta$  and  $\alpha:\beta$  T cells.*

*Note 1: KARs recognize major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules and, like the C-type lectin receptors also found in these cells, can either inhibit or activate the killer cells. If immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) sequences are present in their cytoplasmic domain they are inhibitory.*

*Note 2: Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIR) lacking ITIMs can associate with immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)-containing adaptor molecules in which case they can activate the killer cell.*

[26]

**killer cell**

Cell that displays *cell-mediated cytotoxicity*, including *cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL, Tc)*, *natural killer (NK) cells*, and *natural killer T (NKT) cells*. Some also consider activated *macrophages*, *monocytes*, and *interferon (IFN)-activated neutrophils* to be killer cells.

**killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR)**

killer inhibitory receptor

*Receptor expressed on natural killer (NK) cells that binds to major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules on target cells; binding MHC class I inhibits the signaling that would otherwise lead to target cell killing.*

*Note: If immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) sequences are present in the KIR cytoplasmic domain, MHC class I molecule binding is inhibitory to the killer cell. KIRs lacking ITIMs can associate with immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)-containing adaptor molecules, in which case binding of MHC class I molecules can activate the killer cell.*

**killer lectin-like receptor (KLR)**

*Killer cell receptor that binds to major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules and, like the C-type lectin receptors also found on these cells, can either inhibit or activate the killer cells.*

**killer T cell**

See *cytotoxic T lymphocyte*.

**kinin**

Any of a family of polypeptides that is released during inflammatory responses and that increases vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction.

After [3]

**knockout**

Use of homologous genetic recombination in embryonic *stem cells* to replace a functional gene with a defective copy of the gene.

*Note:* The animals that are produced by this technique can be bred to homozygosity, thus allowing the generation of a null phenotype for that gene product.

[3]

See also *knockout mouse*.

**knockout mouse**

Mouse produced from embryonic cells containing DNA that has been genetically engineered so that it does not express a particular gene or group of genes.

**Kupffer cell**

Fixed tissue *macrophage* found lining the blood sinuses in the liver.

After [3]

See also *macrophage, resident(ial)*.

**Kviem reaction**

Test for *sarcoidosis*, eliciting a *granuloma* at the site of intradermal injection of a *lymph node* extract from a person with active disease. Generally considered non-specific.

**L-selectin**

Any of a group of *leukocyte surface adhesion molecules*; they are classed as CD62 in the *cluster of differentiation (CD) antigen* marker system. All have *lectin* family carbohydrate binding domains and epidermal growth factor (EGF) repeats.

*Note:* L-selectins are expressed on the surface of *platelets* and endothelial cells as well as leukocytes.

[26]

**Ly-6**

Family of multi-gene-encoded, small, generally glycosylphosphatidyl inositol-anchored membrane proteins thought to be involved in cell adhesion and signaling, and in *antigen-independent activation* of *lymphocytes*.

See also *protectin (CD59)*.

**Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS)**

1  
2  
3 Paraneoplastic (see *paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome*) neurological disorder  
4 associated with small-cell lung cancer and caused by *autoantibodies* against voltage-  
5 gated calcium channels.

6  
7 [1]

### 8 9 **lamda ( $\lambda$ )-light chain**

10 One of the two types of *light chain* of human *immunoglobulins (Ig)*, the other type being  
11 the *kappa ( $\kappa$ )-light chain*.

### 12 13 **Langerhans cell**

14 Immature, phagocytic *dendritic cell* of the mammalian skin, characterized by the  
15 presence of *Fc receptors*, *major histocompatibility (MHC) class II molecules*, and  
16 epidermal dendritic cell marker *CD1*. It contains a cytoplasmic organelle called the  
17 Birbeck granule.

### 18 19 **large granular lymphocyte (LGL)**

20  
21 *Lymphocyte* of greater than normal size that contains cytoplasmic granules and  
22 functions as a *natural killer (NK) cell* or *killer (K) cell*. Activated *CD8+ cytotoxic T*  
23 *lymphocytes (CTL, Tc)* also assume an LGL morphology.

24  
25 After [3]

### 26 27 **late phase reaction**

28  
29 *Immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated immune response* occurring 5 to 8 hours after  
30 exposure to *antigen*, after the 'wheal and flare' reaction of immediate *hypersensitivity*  
31 has diminished, with *inflammation* peaking around 24 hours, and then subsiding.

### 32 33 **latex agglutination test**

34 latex fixation test

35 Use of latex beads coated with *antibodies* to detect *antigen* in biological samples.

### 36 37 **latex allergen**

38 *Allergen* found in natural rubber latex (NRL).

39  
40 *Note:* Major NRL-specific allergens are Hev b 1, Hev b 3, Hev b 5 and Hev b 6.02.

41  
42 These four major allergens account for the allergenic potential of NRL  
43 products like gloves, condoms, teats, balloons, etc.

### 44 45 **lectin**

46 Member of a family of proteins that binds specific sugars on glycoproteins and  
47 glycolipids. Some plant lectins are *mitogenic* [e.g., *phytohemagglutinin (PHA)*,  
48 *concanavalin A (ConA)*].

49  
50 [3]

### 51 52 **leukemia**

53 Progressive, malignant disease of the blood-forming organs, characterized by excessive  
54 proliferation and development of *leucocytes* and their precursors in the *bone marrow*  
55 and blood.

1  
2  
3 [5]  
4

5  
6 **leukocyte**

7 White blood cell.

8 *Note:* There are different types of leukocyte including *neutrophils*, *basophils*,  
9 *eosinophils*, *lymphocytes* and *monocytes*.

10 After [3]  
11

12  
13 **leukocyte common antigen (LCA)**

14 *Antigen* common to both *T lymphocytes* and *B lymphocytes*.  
15

16  
17 **leukocyte functional antigen (LFA)**

18 Any of a group of cell-surface *antigens* involved in intercellular adhesion.  
19

20  
21 **leukocytopenia**

22 Amount of *leukocytes* below normal values that is a characteristic feature of *systemic*  
23 *autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *Felty syndrome*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*,  
24 *Sjögren syndrome*, *mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*].

25 After [1]  
26

27  
28 **leukocytosis**

29 Abnormal increase in the number of *leukocytes*.

30 [1]  
31

32  
33 **leukopenia**

34 See *leukocytopenia*.  
35

36  
37 **leukotriene**

38 Metabolic product of arachidonic acid that promotes inflammatory processes (e.g.,  
39 *chemotaxis*, increased vascular permeability) and is produced by a variety of cell types  
40 including *mast cells*, *basophils* and *macrophages*.

41 [3]  
42

43  
44 **ligand**

45 Ion, molecule, or molecular group that binds to another chemical entity to form a larger  
46 complex.

47 [5]

48 *Note:* A ligand may bind specifically to a *receptor* and trigger a response such as  
49 activation of a *signal transduction pathway*.  
50

51  
52 **ligand of inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOSL, LICOS)**

53 Protein involved, after binding to *inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOS)*, in several  
54 harmful *immune responses*, such as *autoimmunity*, *allergy*, or *graft-versus-host (GVH)*  
55 *reaction*.

56 *Note:* Prolonged ICOS and ICOSL expression at chronic inflammatory sites seems  
57 to give rise to pathology.  
58  
59  
60

**light chain**

Small polypeptide subunit of an *antibody* or *immunoglobulin (Ig)*.

*Note:* A typical antibody is composed of two immunoglobulin (Ig) *heavy chains* and two Ig light chains.

**limulus test**

Method of detecting bacterial *endotoxins* based on gelation of a blood cell lysate from the horseshoe crab.

See also *pyogen test*.

**linear epitope**

continuous epitope

*Antigenic determinant* that is contiguous in the amino acid sequence of a protein and therefore does not require the protein to be folded into its native conformation for *antibody* to bind.

*Note:* The *epitopes* detected by *T cells* are continuous.

After [2]

**linked recognition**

Requirement for a *helper T lymphocyte (Th)* and *B lymphocyte* to interact with separate but physically linked *epitopes* in the same *antigen*, in order for an *immune response* to a *thymus-dependent (TD) antigen*.

**lipid raft**

Cholesterol- and glycosphingolipid-rich membrane subdomain in which molecules involved in cellular *activation* become concentrated.

[3]

See also *caveola*.

**lipopolysaccharide (LPS)**

*Endotoxin* derived from Gram-negative bacterial cell walls, which has inflammatory and *mitogenic* actions.

[3]

**live attenuated vaccine**

*Vaccine* prepared from living attenuated organisms or from viruses that have been attenuated but can still replicate in the cells of the *host* organism.

*Note:* The live attenuated vaccine contains a version of living bacteria or viruses that have been weakened (attenuated) so they can no longer cause disease. Since they are very close to the actual infection, they can cause strong cell and *antibody* responses.

See also *attenuated vaccine*.

**liver–kidney microsomal antibodies (LKM)**

*Autoantibodies* directed against cytochrome P450 and uridine diphosphate (UDP)-

1  
2  
3 glucuronosyltransferase (UGT) *antigens* typically found in patients with immune-  
4 mediated hepatitis.

5  
6 *Note:* These include LKM-1 *antibodies* (cytochrome P4502D6) in patients with  
7 *autoimmune* hepatitis type 2 (AIH-2) and *autoimmunity* associated with  
8 hepatitis C; LKM-2 (cytochrome P4502C9) in patients with drug-induced  
9 hepatitis caused by tienilic acid; and LKM-3 (UGT-1) in patients with chronic  
10 hepatitis D and AIH-2.

11 [1]

12  
13  
14 **local lymph node assay (LLNA)**

15 See *murine local lymph node assay (LLNA)*.

16  
17  
18 **lupus**

19 See *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*.

20  
21 **lupus anticoagulant**

22 See *anticoagulant, lupus*.

23  
24  
25 **lupus erythematosus**

26 See *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*.

27  
28  
29 **lupus-like syndrome**

30 See *drug-induced lupus*.

31  
32 **lymph**

33 Clear fluid that bathes the tissues of the body, carrying bacteria to *lymph nodes* and  
34 ultimately to the blood stream.

35 *Note 1:* Lymph can also transport metastatic cancer cells.

36 *Note 2:* Lymph plays a role in maintaining body fluid balance.

37 See also *lymphatic (system)*.

38  
39  
40 **lymphadenopathy**

41 Enlarged *lymph nodes*.

42 [3]

43  
44  
45 **lymphangion**

46 Morphological or functional unit of *lymphatic* vessels consisting of the region between  
47 adjacent lymphatic valves.

48  
49  
50 **lymphatic (system)**

51 Describing vessels whose special function is the collection of *lymph* and its ultimate  
52 conveyance to the blood circulation and thoracic duct.

53  
54  
55 **lymphatic tissue**

56 Tissue involved in the collection, production, and handling of *lymph*, including the  
57 lymphatic vessels and *lymph nodes*.

**lymph node**

lymph gland

Any of the small rounded gland-like structures of the *lymphatic system*, which occur along the lymphatic vessels and which are responsible for removing bacteria, viruses and foreign molecules from the *lymph* stream and for producing *lymphocytes* and *antibodies*.

**lymphoblast (n), /ic (adj)**

Abnormal cell with a large nucleus and scanty cytoplasm, thought to be the precursor of the *lymphocyte*, found in blood and blood-forming organs in patients with lymphoblastic *leukemia*.

**lymphocyte**

Any small *leucocyte* found in the blood, *lymph*, and *lymphoid tissues* that has a single round nucleus and little or no granulation in the cytoplasm; lymphocytes may be either *B cells*, which produce *humoral immunity*, or *T cells*, which produce *cell-mediated immunity (CMI)*.

*Note:* Lymphocytes constitute about a quarter of the total leucocytes in the blood stream but occur in large numbers in the *lymph nodes* and other *lymphatic tissue*.

**lymphocyte-activated killer cell**

See *lymphokine-activated killer cell (LAK)*.

**lymphocyte-activating factor**

Interleukin-1 (IL-1)

See *interleukin (IL)*.

**lymphocyte activation**

Sum of the biochemical processes necessary to stimulate a resting *lymphocyte* to become an immune effector cell, requiring *antigen* and costimulatory molecules.

**lymphocyte blastogenesis assay (LBA)**

See *lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)*.

**lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1)**

*Adhesion molecule* found on *lymphocytes*, *macrophages*, and *neutrophils*, involved in adhesion of lymphocytes to *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*.

**lymphocyte homing**

Process that directs *lymphocyte* subsets to specialized microenvironments that control their differentiation, regulate their survival, and target immune effector cells to sites of *antigenic* or microbial invasion.

See also *homing*, *homing receptor*.

**lymphocyte homing receptor**

Cell surface glycoprotein on *lymphocytes* and other *leukocytes* that mediates adhesion to specialized blood vessels, the *high endothelial venules*.

*Note:* Several different classes of lymphocyte homing receptors have been identified, and they appear to bind to different surface molecules (*addressins*) on high endothelial venules in different tissues.

**lymphocyte proliferation test (LPT)**

Test of immune *sensitization* in which white blood cells are exposed in vitro to an *antigen* and multiply if already sensitized to that antigen.

See also *lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)*.

**lymphocyte repertoire, immunoglobulin or T-cell receptor**

Profile of *immunoglobulins (Ig)* or *T-cell receptors (TCR)* available within a specified group of cells.

*Note:* Each profile is characterized by the *antigen* specificities of the immunoglobulins or T-cell receptors present.

**lymphocyte subpopulation**

Population forming part of the whole population of *lymphocytes*, usually characterized by sensitivity to a given *antigen*.

**lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)**

lymphocyte blastogenesis assay (LBA)

Test for increased DNA synthesis followed by cell division and differentiation of *lymphocytes* in response to *antigens* or *mitogens*; an in vitro test of lymphocyte function.

See also *lymphocyte proliferation test*.

**lymphocytopenia**

Deficiency of *lymphocytes* in the blood compared with normal values.

*Note:* This is a characteristic feature of *systemic autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *Sjögren syndrome*, *mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*].

After [1]

**lymphocytosis**

Condition characterised by an abnormal increase in the number of *lymphocytes* in blood, usually a result of infection or inflammation.

**lymphocytotoxicity**

Capability of lysing *lymphocytes*.

*Note:* Lymphocytes having a specific cell surface *antigen* are lysed when incubated with *antiserum* and *complement* or when attacked by *primed histoincompatible T lymphocytes*.

**lymphoid follicle**



1  
2  
3 Region of clustered *B cells*, allowing the selection of *antigen*-binding B cells by *dendritic*  
4 *cells* during *adaptive immune responses*.  
5  
6

### 7 **lymphoid stem cell**

8 *Stem cell* giving rise to the lineage of *lymphocytes*.  
9

### 10 **lymphoid tissue**

11 Any vertebrate tissue that is made up predominantly of *lymphocytes*, e.g. *lymph*, *lymph*  
12 *nodes*, *spleen*, *thymus*, *Peyer's patches*, adenoids, pharyngeal *tonsils*, and, in birds,  
13 *bursa of Fabricius* and cecal tonsils.  
14

15 [26]  
16

### 17 **lymphokine**

18 *Cytokine* produced by *lymphocytes*.  
19

20 [3]  
21

### 22 **lymphokine-activated killer cell (LAK)**

23 lymphocyte-activated killer cell

24 *Killer (K) cell* or *natural killer (NK) cell* activated *in vitro* by *interleukin (IL)-2* to give  
25 enhanced killing of *target cells*.  
26

27 [3]  
28

### 29 **lymphoma**

30 Any neoplasm, usually malignant, of the *lymphatic tissues*.  
31

### 32 **lymphopenia**

33 See *lymphocytopenia*.  
34

### 35 **lymphopoiesis**

36 Production of *lymphocytes*.  
37

### 38 **lymphoproliferation**

39 Proliferation of *lymphocytes* in response to stimulation with cellular activators, including  
40 *antigens* or *mitogens*.  
41

### 42 **lymphosum**

43 Sum of *B cells* + *T cells* + *natural killer (NK) cells* determined separately (by *flow*  
44 *cytometry*), compared to the total number of *lymphocytes*.  
45

46 *Note:* Used as a check on accuracy in counting the proportion of cell types, e.g., a  
47 value of  $(100 \pm 10)\%$  being acceptable and reflecting the uncertainty of the  
48 method.  
49  
50  
51

### 52 **lymphotoxin (LT)**

53 Tumor necrosis factor  $\beta$  (TNF- $\beta$ )

54 *T cell*-derived *cytokine* that is *cytotoxic* for certain tumor cells and also has  
55 immunoregulatory functions.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

[3]

### lysosome

Cytoplasmic granule containing hydrolytic enzymes involved in the digestion of phagocytosed (see *phagocytosis*) material.

After [3]

### M cell

See *microfold cell*.

### macroautophagy

non-specific autophagy

Sequestration and breakdown of organelles and long-lived proteins in a double-membrane vesicle, called an autophagosome or autophagic vacuole, inside the cell.

*Note 1:* The outer membrane of the autophagosome fuses in the cytoplasm with a *lysosome* to form an autolysosome or *autophagolysosome* where their contents are degraded by acidic lysosomal hydrolases.

*Note 2:* Macroautophagy is the major inducible pathway for the general turnover of cytoplasmic constituents in eukaryotic cells. It is also responsible for the degradation of active cytoplasmic enzymes and organelles during nutrient starvation.

See also *autophagy*.

### macrophage

Large (10–20  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter) ameboid and phagocytic cell (see *phagocyte*) found in many tissues, especially in areas of *inflammation*, derived from blood *monocytes* and playing an important role in *host defense* mechanisms.

[5]

*Note:* Two main functions are recognized: *phagocytosis* and *antigen presentation*.

### macrophage, resident(ial)

macrophage, fixed

*Macrophage* stationed at a point where microbial invasion or accumulation of dust is likely to occur.

*Note:* Each type of macrophage, determined by its location, has a specific name:

<u>Name of cell</u>	<u>Location</u>
Dust cells/alveolar macrophages	pulmonary alveolus of lungs
Histiocytes	connective tissue
<i>Kupffer cells</i>	liver
Microglial cells	neural tissue
<i>Monocytes</i>	blood
Osteoclasts	bone
Sinusoidal lining cells	<i>spleen</i>

### macrophage function test

Any assay suitable to characterize the effect of substances on *macrophage* function in vivo or in vitro.

*Note:* Common macrophage function tests are the *chromium release assay* and the *chromate uptake assay*.

### **macrophage mannose receptor (MMR)**

*Receptor* involved in pathogen recognition, in clearance of endogenous serum glycoproteins, and in *antigen presentation*.

*Note 1:* Clusters of lectin domains bind mannose residues on microbial and fungal surfaces in a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent manner.

*Note 2:* The receptor activates the C3 component of *complement*.

### **macropinocytosis**

'High-volume' *pinocytosis* by which *dendritic cells* engulf relatively large volumes of fluid from their surroundings, enabling them to take in many *antigens* nonspecifically.

### **major basic protein**

Small basic arginine-rich peptide (pI 10.9, relative molecular mass of 13.8 kDa) in the granules of *eosinophils* that kills helminths and protozoa.

[4]

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC)**

Cluster of genes encoding cell surface molecules involved in *antigen presentation* to *T cells*. In humans, they are found on chromosome 6 and in mice on chromosome 17. They are polymorphic and code for *antigens* that lead to rapid *graft rejection* between members of a single species that differ at these loci.

*Note:* Several classes of protein such as *MHC class I* and *II molecules* are gene products encoded in this region. The MHC-encoded molecules are also known as *human leukocyte antigens (HLA)*.

See also *H-2*, *H-2 complex*.

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule**

Surface protein encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* expressed on all nucleated cells, presenting antigen-derived peptides.

See also *antigen presentation*.

After [1]

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecule**

Surface protein encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* expressed on *antigen-presenting cells (APC)*, presenting antigen-derived peptides.

See also *antigen presentation*.

After [1]

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class III molecule**

*Antigen* encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* including several *complement factors*, *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)  $\alpha$* , and *lymphotoxin*.

*Note:* The genes are found on the short arm of chromosome 6 between class I and class II genes, and although the gene products share no common function with the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* and *MHC class II molecules*, they are often discussed together.

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule**

Any of the cell-surface glycoprotein *alloantigens* encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* that are involved in the regulation of *immune responses* and can cause the *rejection of grafted tissues, cells, and tumors bearing them*.

### **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction**

Necessity that *T cells* recognize processed *antigen* only when presented by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules* of the original *haplotype* associated with T-cell *priming*.

[3]

### **Mancini immunodiffusion**

See *radial immunodiffusion*.

### **mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)**

Intracellular signaling molecule (phosphoinositide-3-kinase) involved in control of cell growth, whose activity is negatively influenced by the *immunosuppressive* drug rapamycin (Annex II).

### **mannan-binding lectin-associated serine peptidase-1 and -2 (MASP1, MASP2)**

mannose-binding protein-associated serine protease (MASP)

*Complement*-dependent bactericidal factors that bind to the Ra and R2 polysaccharides expressed by certain enterobacterium strains, such as Ra *chemotype* strains of *Salmonella*.

*Note 1:* Alternate splicing of the genes results in multiple transcript variants encoding two Ra-reactive factors (RARF) that are involved in the *mannose-binding lectin (MBL)* pathway of complement activation.

*Note 2:* They are serine proteases that share about 40% sequence identity with complement components C1r and C1s.

### **mannose-binding lectin (MBL)**

mannan-binding lectin

See *mannose-binding protein*.

### **mannose-binding protein (MBP)**

mannose-binding lectin (MBL)

Member of the *collectin* family of calcium-dependent *lectins*, and an *acute phase protein*.

*Note:* This lectin functions as a stimulator of the *classical pathway of complement activation*, and as an *opsonin* for *phagocytosis* by binding to mannose, a sugar residue usually found in an exposed form only on the surface of

1  
2  
3 microorganisms.

4 [3]

5  
6  
7 **mantle zone**

8 mantle

9 corona

10 Outer ring of small *lymphocytes* surrounding the centre of a lymphatic nodule (*lymphoid*  
11 *follicle*). It contains transient lymphocytes and is the location of the *lymphoma* in mantle  
12 cell lymphoma.  
13

14  
15 **Mantoux test**

16 See *tuberculin*.

17  
18  
19 **marginal zone**

20 Outer area of the *splenic* periarteriolar lymphoid sheath (PALS) that is rich in *B cells*,  
21 particularly those responding to *thymus*-independent *antigens*.

22 [3]

23  
24  
25 **margination**

26 *Leukocyte* adhesion to the endothelium of blood vessels in the early phase of an acute  
27 *inflammatory response*.

28 [3]

29  
30  
31 **marrow, bone**

32 Soft fatty vascular substance in the cavity of bone where blood cells are formed.  
33

34  
35 **mast cell**

36 Large connective tissue cell that contains inflammatory substances such as *histamine*,  
37 proteases (including tryptases, chymases, and carboxypeptidase A), heparin and  
38 chondroitin sulfate proteoglycans, and eicosanoid lipid mediators (the precursors of  
39 *leukotrienes* and *prostaglandins*). These substances are released in *allergic* reactions or  
40 in response to injury or *inflammation*.

41 *Note:* Mast cells are bound within tissues that interface with the external world  
42 such as the skin, respiratory or intestinal tract, as well as in other areas  
43 such as heart, synovium, and uterus. Mast cells do not circulate. The mast  
44 cell has binding sites on its surface for *immunoglobulin E (IgE)*.  
45

46  
47 **mast cell activation disorder (syndrome) (MCAD/MCAS)**

48 Disorder or syndrome in which there is evidence of *systemic*, inappropriate release of  
49 *mast cell* mediators.

50 *Note:* While people with MCAD/MCAS have a normal or near-normal tryptase level  
51 and a *bone marrow* biopsy that contains a normal number of mast cells,  
52 they experience most of the same symptoms as someone with  
53 *mastocytosis*.  
54  
55

56  
57 **mast cell degranulation**  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 See *degranulation*.

4  
5  
6 **mast cell stabilizer**

7 Non-steroidal medication that reduces the release of substances from *mast cells*, e.g.,  
8 sodium cromoglycate.

9  
10 **mastocyte**

11 See *mast cell*.

12  
13 **mastocytoma**

14 mast cell tumor

15 Nodule of *mast cells* that can involve the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and sometimes  
16 muscle.

17  
18 *Note:* Mastocytomas are rare and are mostly seen in infants within the first 3  
19 months of life.

20  
21  
22 **mastocytosis**

23 Rare disease characterized by the presence of too many *mast cells* in various organs  
24 and tissues. The condition can be a chronic, long-term illness or it can develop  
25 suddenly.

26  
27 *Note:* Mastocytosis may be *systemic*, involving a variety of organs, or cutaneous,  
28 involving only the skin, also referred to as urticaria pigmentosa.

29  
30 **maturation** (in immunology)

31 Process by which *B cells* produce *antibodies* with increased *affinity* for *antigen* during  
32 the course of an *immune response*.

33  
34  
35 **mature B cell**

36 *B cell* with *immunoglobulin M (IgM)* and *immunoglobulin D (IgD)* on its surface.

37  
38  
39 **medulla**

40 Inner (central) region of an organ.

41 [3]

42  
43  
44 **megakaryocyte**

45 *Bone marrow* precursor of *platelets*.

46 [3]

47  
48 **membrane attack complex (MAC)**

49 Complex of *complement* components C5b–C9 that inserts as a pore into the membrane  
50 of *target cells* leading to cell lysis.

51 [3]

52  
53  
54 **memory** (in immunology)

55 immunological memory

56 Characteristic of the acquired *immune response* (see *acquired immunity*) of  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *lymphocytes* whereby a second encounter with a given *antigen* produces a secondary  
4 immune response that is faster, greater and longer lasting than the *primary immune*  
5 *response*.

6  
7 [3]

### 8 9 **memory cell**

10 Clonally expanded *T cell* or *B cell* produced during a *primary immune response* and  
11 which is *primed* to mediate a *secondary immune response* to the original *antigen*.

12  
13 [3]

### 14 15 **memory lymphocyte immunostimulation assay (MELISA)**

16 Patented modification of the *lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)* based on the  
17 *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* principle.

### 18 19 20 **mesenteric lymph node**

21 *Lymph node* lying between layers of the mesentery.

### 22 23 24 **metabolic activation**

25 Formation of one or more chemically reactive intermediate(s) as a result of modification  
26 of a molecule by the *xenobiotic*-metabolizing enzymes of liver and other organs.

27 *Note 1:* This may lead to acute cell damage and recognition of the damaged cell by  
28 the *immune system* as *non-self*.

29 *Note 2:* The reactive intermediate can also act as a hapten.

### 30 31 32 **microautophagy**

33 Process in which *lysosomes* directly engulf cytoplasm by invagination, protrusion, and  
34 (or) septation of the lysosomal limiting membrane.

35 See also *autophagy*.

### 36 37 38 **microfold cell**

39 M cell

40 Cell found in the follicle-associated epithelium of the *Peyer's patch* that has the unique  
41 ability to sample *antigen* from the lumen of the small intestine and deliver it via  
42 *transcytosis* to *antigen presenting cells (APC)* and *lymphocytes* located in a unique  
43 pocket-like structure on their basolateral side.

### 44 45 46 **microglobulin**

47 Any small globular protein found on the surface of many cells, including *lymphocytes*,  
48 and in the blood *plasma* distinct from albumin.

### 49 50 51 **microscopic polyangiitis (MPA)**

52 *ANCA*-associated necrotizing, *pauci-immune vasculitis* of the small vessels  
53 (capillaries, venules, arterioles) frequently associated with rapidly progressive  
54 *glomerulonephritis* and (or) hemorrhagic *alveolitis* as well as *autoantibodies* against  
55 *myeloperoxidase*.

56  
57 [1]

**migration** (of cells)

Movement of cells from one part of the developing embryo or the body to another part.

*Note:* Cells often migrate in response to, and towards or away from, specific external signals, a process called *chemotaxis*.

**minor histocompatibility antigen**

Non-*major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*-encoded cell surface processed peptide which, in association with MHC-encoded molecules, contributes to *graft rejection*, albeit not usually as severe as that due to MHC mismatch.

[3]

**mitogen** (n), /ic (adj)

Substance that induces *lymphocyte* transformation or, more generally, mitosis and cell proliferation.

[5]

*Note:* Mitogens most commonly employed in *immunotoxicology* assays include the *T cell* mitogens *concanavalin A (ConA)* and *phytohemagglutinin (PHA)*. Mitogens routinely used for assessing *B cell* proliferation include *pokeweed mitogen (PWM)*, which can also act on T cells, and *Escherichia coli lipopolysaccharide (LPS)*.

**mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK)**

Member of a kinase network in which 'upstream' kinases activate 'downstream' kinases that, in response to phosphorylation, translocate to the nucleus and activate transcription factors.

*Note:* These include the extracellular regulated kinases (Erk), stress-activated protein kinase (SAPK or p38), and the kinase of the c-jun oncoprotein (JNK).

**mitophagy**

*Autophagy*-related pathway specific for mitochondria; it can be subdivided into macromitophagy and micromitophagy depending upon the degree of mitophagy.

**mixed lymphocyte response/reaction (MLR)**

*T cell*-proliferative response induced by cells expressing *allogeneic major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*.

[3]

**mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)**

Sharp's syndrome

Human *autoimmune disease* in which the *immune system* attacks the body, producing symptoms that combine features of *polymyositis*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and *systemic scleroderma*, and thus being considered as an overlap syndrome.

*Note 1:* MCTD commonly causes joint pain/swelling, *Raynaud phenomenon*, muscle *inflammation*, and scarring of the skin of the hand. It does not



1  
2  
3 typically cause kidney disease or seizures.

4 *Note 2:* Distinguishing laboratory characteristics are a positive, speckled *anti-*  
5 *nuclear antibody (ANA)* and an anti-U1-RNP antibody.  
6  
7

8 **molecular mimicry** (in immunology)

9 Concept that identity or similarity of *epitopes* expressed by a pathogen and by a self  
10 molecule may lead to production of *antibodies* reacting to the *self-antigen*.  
11

12 *Note:* This may explain how some *autoimmune diseases* develop.  
13

14 **monoclonal antibody**

15 *Antibody* derived from a single *B cell clone* and therefore bearing identical *antigen-*  
16 binding sites and *isotype* to other members of the clone.  
17

18 After [3]  
19

20 **monocyte**

21 Mononuclear *phagocyte* found in blood and which is the precursor of the tissue  
22 *macrophage*.  
23

24 [3]

25 *Note 1:* Formed in the *bone marrow* from the promonocyte, monocytes are  
26 transported to tissues, as of the lung and liver, where they develop into  
27 macrophages.

28 *Note 2:* Formerly called large mononuclear *leukocyte* and hyaline or transitional  
29 leukocyte.  
30

31 **monokine**

32 Alternative name for a *cytokine* produced by *monocytes*.  
33  
34

35 **mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS)**

36 reticuloendothelial system (RES)

37 Network of phagocytic cells (see *phagocyte*) throughout the body. System comprising  
38 blood *monocytes* and tissue *macrophages*.  
39

40 After [3]  
41

42 **mouse IgE test (MIGET)**

43 Procedure in which serum *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* levels are measured in mice  
44 following topical exposure to a test substance. Substances that cause a significant  
45 increase in IgE are considered to be potential respiratory *allergens*.  
46  
47

48 **mouse ear-swelling test (MEST)**

49 Test for sensitization in which the test substance is applied topically to the ear of a  
50 mouse for three consecutive days. The change in ear thickness is then measured  
51 following *challenge* on day 8.  
52  
53

54 **mucocutaneous**

55 Pertaining to or affecting the mucous membranes and (or) the skin.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

**mucosa**

Moist tissue that lines some organs and body cavities, including the nose, mouth, lungs, and digestive tract.

**mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)**

*Secondary lymphoid tissue* present in the surface *mucosa* of the respiratory tract and bronchus (*BALT*), gastrointestinal tract (*GALT*), nasal passages (*NALT*), larynx (*LALT*), conjunctiva (*CALT*), and genitourinary tract, and in the skin sub-epidermis (*SALT*).

*Note:* MALT plays an important part in limiting entry of pathogens through the mucosal surfaces.

**mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1)**

Protein involved in trafficking of *lymphocytes* to *mucosal* endothelium.

*Note:* Expression of MAdCAM-1 is induced in the murine endothelial cell line bEnd.3 by *tumor necrosis factor  $\alpha$*  (*TNF- $\alpha$* ), *interleukin (IL)-1*, and bacterial *lipopolysaccharide (LPS)*.

**mucosal tolerance**

State of *lymphocyte* hyporesponsiveness to protein *antigens* applied across *mucosal* surfaces by oral or nasal instillation.

**multiple chemical sensitivity (MCS)**

idiopathic environmental intolerance

*Intolerance* condition attributed to extreme sensitivity to various environmental chemicals, found in air, food, water, building materials, or fabrics.

*Note 1:* This syndrome is characterized by the patient's belief that his or her symptoms are caused by very low-level exposure to environmental chemicals. The term "chemical" is used to refer broadly to many natural and man-made substances, some of which have several chemical constituents.

*Note 2:* Several theories have been advanced to explain the cause of multiple chemical sensitivity, including *allergy*, toxic effects, and neurobiological sensitization. There is insufficient scientific evidence to confirm a relationship between any of these possible causes and symptoms.

[5]

**multiple myeloma**

*Plasma cell* malignancy resulting in high levels of monoclonal *immunoglobulin (Ig)* in *serum* and of free *light chains (Bence-Jones protein)* in urine.

[3]

See also *myeloma*.

**multiple sclerosis**

Disease of the central nervous system, believed to be *autoimmune*, in which an *inflammatory response* results in demyelination of neurons and loss of neurological function.

**multiplex immunoassay**

Type of particle *immunoassay* employing sets of microspheres with various physicochemical features, each labeled with a different *antibody*. The method allows detection in a single measurement of an array of 100 or more proteins.

See also *particle immunoassay*.

**multipotent progenitor cell**

Undifferentiated *stem cell*, obtained from adult *bone marrow* or other non-embryonic tissue sources, that possesses the ability to differentiate into a variety of cell types, especially into cells of a closely related family of cells that are expanded in vitro and deposited in master cell banks for 'off-the-shelf' use, with potential *hematopoiesis*-inducing and immunomodulating activities.

*Note 1: Allogeneic* multipotent adult progenitor cells (MAPCs) are non-immunogenic due to the lack of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* expression, and so elicit no *immune response* upon administration.

*Note 2: In vivo*, bone marrow-derived adult stem cells are capable of maturing into a broad range of cell types and may help to restore the *immune system* by producing multiple therapeutic molecules in response to *inflammation* and tissue damage.

**murine local lymph node assay (LLNA)**

Predictive test of sensitization in which a test substance is applied topically to the skin of mice (usually three times at daily intervals) and the weight of the local *draining lymph nodes* is measured at six days. Usually *lymphoproliferation* in the nodes is measured following injection of [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine or bromodeoxyuridine.

**mutation** (in immunology)

See *somatic hypermutation*.

**myasthenia gravis, acquired**

*Autoimmune disease* characterised by muscle weakness usually affecting ocular and oropharyngeal muscles due to an *autoimmune* attack against components of the neuromuscular junction (e.g., the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor).

*Note: This disease may be idiopathic*, paraneoplastic [*thymic tumor* or lung (*Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome*) tumor, etc.], or drug-induced (e.g., D-penicillamine).

After [1]

**myelodysplastic syndrome**

preleukemia (obsolete)

Diverse collection of hematological conditions united by ineffective production (or dysplasia) of *myeloid* blood cells and risk of transformation to *acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)*. *Anemia* requiring chronic blood *transfusion* is frequently present.

**myeloma**

1  
2  
3 Tumor composed of cells derived from hematopoietic cells (see *hematopoiesis*) of the  
4 *bone marrow*, or from *mast cells*.

5 See also *Bence-Jones protein*, *multiple myeloma*.

### 8 **myeloid**

9 myelogenous

10 Referring to the nonlymphocytic groups of white blood cells, including *granulocytes*,  
11 *monocytes*, and *platelets*.

12 *Note: Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)* is also known as acute myeloid  
13 leukemia.

### 16 **myeloid stem cell**

17 One of two groups of *stem cells* produced in the *bone marrow*. Myeloid stem cells may  
18 mature into several types of blood cells, including acidic *basophils*, *eosinophils*,  
19 *erythrocytes*, *macrophages*, *megakaryocytes*, and *neutrophils*.

### 22 **myeloid tissue**

23 Tissue within red *bone marrow* that produces the blood cells. It is found around the  
24 blood vessels and contains various cell types that are precursors of the blood cells.

### 27 **myeloma protein**

28 *Monoclonal antibody* secreted by *myeloma* cells.

29 [3]

### 31 **myeloperoxidase (MPO)**

32 Enzyme found in azurophilic granules of *neutrophils*, the major target of *antineutrophil*  
33 *cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)*.

34 *Note 1: MPO autoantibodies* are diagnostic markers for microscopic polyangiitis,  
35 rapidly progressive *glomerulonephritis*, and *Goodpasture disease* or  
36 *syndrome*.

37 *Note 2: MPO autoantibodies* are also found in patients exposed to silica or drugs  
38 (e.g., hydralazine, propylthiouracil, D-penicillamine) as well as in some  
39 patients with *Wegener granulomatosis (WG)* and other *autoimmune*  
40 *diseases*.

41 After [1]

### 45 **myelopoiesis**

46 Process of formation and development of *myeloid* blood cells in the *bone marrow*.

### 49 **myelosuppression**

50 Decrease in *myeloid* cells, including *pancytopenia*, *anemia*, *leukopenia*, *lymphopenia*,  
51 *thrombocytopenia*, and other *blood dyscrasias*.

### 54 **myositis, autoimmune**

55 Rare *systemic* inflammatory myopathy, including primary polymyositis, primary  
56 dermatomyositis, myositis associated with malignancy, childhood dermatomyositis, and  
57

1  
2  
3 myositis with multisystem *autoimmune disease* [e.g., *mixed connective tissue disease*  
4 (*MCTD*), *systemic sclerosis (SSc)*].

5 *Note: Autoantibodies* against aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases (e.g., anti-Jo-1), signal  
6 recognition particles (e.g., anti-SRP54), nuclear helicase (anti-Mi-2), tRNA  
7 and tRNA–protein complexes (e.g., anti-Mas), and translation factor (anti-  
8 KJ) have been described as myositis-specific.  
9

10  
11 **NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat (LRR)-, and pyrin (N-terminal homology)**  
12 **domain (PYD)-containing protein 3 (NALP3, NLRP3)**

13 cryopyrin

14 *NOD-like receptor (NLR)*, found in certain *inflammasomes*, that binds to aggregated  
15 proteins and the peptides that compose them. Its activation leads to the generation of  
16 inflammatory *cytokines*, such as *interleukin (IL)-1*, and neurotoxic factors.  
17

18 *Note: Mutations* in NALP3 are responsible for the autoinflammatory diseases  
19 familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome, Muckle-Wells syndrome and  
20 neonatal onset multisystem inflammatory disease.  
21  
22

23 **NADPH oxidase**

24 See *respiratory burst*.  
25

26 **NK cell**

27 See *natural killer (NK) cell*.  
28  
29

30 **NKT cell**

31 See *natural killer T (NKT) cell*.  
32  
33

34 **N-nucleotides**

35 Non-templated nucleotides added to the junctions between *antibody* and *T-cell receptor*  
36 (*TCR*) *variable (V) gene*, *diversity (D) gene*, and *joining (J) gene* segments during gene  
37 rearrangement.  
38

39 [3]  
40

41 **NOD-like receptor (NLR)**

42 Any of a large family of cytoplasmic proteins containing a nucleotide-binding domain  
43 and *leucine-rich repeats (LRR)*, involved in regulation of *inflammation* and *apoptosis*;  
44 many family members are thought to function as *pattern recognition receptors (PPR)*.  
45  
46

47 **N-region**

48 Highly *variable region* on the *H-chain* of *immunoglobulins*.  
49

50 **naïve lymphocyte**

51 Mature *T cell* or *B cell* that has not yet been activated (see *lymphocyte activation*) by  
52 encounter with *antigen*.  
53

54 [3]  
55

56 **nasal-associated lymphoid tissue (NALT)**  
57  
58  
59  
60

See *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)*.

### natural autoantibodies (NAA)

Part of the naturally occurring repertoire of polyreactive *antibodies* that bind to *autoantigens* with low *affinity*. They are mainly of *immunoglobulin M (IgM) isotype* and produced by *CD5+ B lymphocytes*.

*Note 1:* Natural antibodies and their producing cells may have a physiological role in the following processes: (i) first line of protection against external invaders, (ii) elimination of degraded autoantigens and senescent cells, and (iii) tolerization (see *tolerance*) of *T cells* by presenting autoantigens, thereby in protecting from development of pathological *autoimmunity*.

*Note 2:* In contrast, natural autoantibodies may become pathogenic in clonal B cell disorders, e.g., *monoclonal anti-I antibodies* in cold agglutinin disease cause *autoimmune hemolytic anemia*.

After [1]

### natural immunity

*Host defense* mechanisms that do not require prior exposure to  $\square$  *antigen*.

*Note:* Nonimmunological defense may involve the actions of *macrophages* and *natural killer (NK) cells*, mucocutaneous or integumental barriers, the action of cilia or microvilli, or physiological processes, e.g., urinary outflow, vascular perfusion of tissues, or the presence of native flora, which 'outcompete' pathogens.

### natural killer (NK) cell

Large granular *lymphocyte* which does not rearrange nor express either *immunoglobulin* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* genes but is able to recognize and destroy certain tumor and virally infected cells in a *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule-* and *antibody-independent* manner.

[3]

### natural killer cell activity assay

Immunotoxicity test in which *lymphoid tissue* or blood that has been treated with a test compound is co-incubated with target cells. The cytotoxic effect on target cells is measured, e.g., with the *chromium release assay*. It is used under circumstances where differences from untreated cells are attributed to *natural killer (NK) cell* activity.

### natural killer T (NKT) cell

*Lymphoid* cells with a morphology and granule content intermediate between *T cells* and *natural killer (NK) cells*.

*Note:* NKT cells express low levels of  $\alpha\beta$  *T cell receptor* with an invariant  $\alpha$  chain and very restricted  $\beta$  chain specificity, recognize lipid and glycolipid *antigens* presented by the nonclassical *MHC-* like molecule CD1d, and are potent producers of *interleukin (IL)-4* and *IFN- $\gamma$* .

After [3]

**natural regulatory T cell**

See *regulatory T cell (Treg)*.

**natural resistance-associated macrophage protein (NRAMP)-1**

Iron transporter that plays a critical role in *macrophage activation* and differentiation.

*Note:* Allele 3 of the NRAMP-1 promoter is associated with *autoimmune* disorders [e.g., *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, *diabetes mellitus type 1*, *multiple sclerosis*].

After [1]

**necro/sis** (n), /**tic** (adj)

Sum of morphological changes resulting from cell death by lysis and (or) enzymatic degradation, usually accompanied by *inflammation* and affecting groups of cells in a tissue.

*Note:* Distinct from *apoptosis*, *autophagy*, and other modes of programmed cell death.

After [5]

**negative selection**

Deletion by *apoptosis* in the *thymus* of *T cells* that recognize self-peptides presented by self-major *histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*, thus preventing the development of *autoimmune T cells*. Negative selection of developing *B cells* is also thought to occur if they encounter high levels of *self-antigen* in the *bone marrow*.

[3]

**neoantigen**

*Antigen* newly expressed on a tumor or virally infected cell, or arising after macromolecule-*haptens* binding.

**neonat/e** (n), /**al** (adj)

Infant during the first 4 weeks of postnatal life.

*Note:* For statistical purposes, some scientists have defined the period as the first 7 days of postnatal life. The precise definition varies from species to species.

After [5]

**neonatal tolerance**

*Tolerance* to specific foreign *antigens* induced by the exposure of a bird or mammal to the foreign antigens during embryonic or *neonatal* life, depending upon species.

**nephritis, autoimmune**

*Inflammation* of the kidney due to immunological reaction to renal *antigens*.

*Note:* Common examples are anti-glomerular basement membrane disease (*Goodpasture disease* or *syndrome*), *autoimmune* tubulointerstitial *nephritis* with antibody to tubular basement membrane, or occurring as part of *systemic autoimmune diseases* independent of renal *autoantigens* [*lupus*

nephritis in *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, interstitial nephritis in *Sjögren syndrome*, nephritis in *ANCA-associated vasculitis*, *cryoglobulinemic vasculitis*, or *hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis syndrome*].

After [1]

### **nettle rash**

See *hives*.

### **neuropathy, autoimmune**

*Autoimmune disease* of the nervous system.

*Note 1:* More and more neuropathies are described as autoimmune or possibly autoimmune in nature. Little is known about *xenobiotics* in the pathogenesis, but infections may play an important role in the initiation of some diseases.

*Note 2:* Autoimmune neuropathies may be manifested at the neuromuscular junction, as central nervous system diseases (e.g., *multiple sclerosis*, *paraneoplastic autoimmune syndromes*, stiff-person syndrome, as well as manifestations of *systemic* autoimmune diseases), and diseases of the peripheral nerves (e.g., various forms of acute and chronic demyelinating neuropathies).

After [1]

### **neutralization** (in immunology)

Blocking by an *antibody* of the effects of a virus.

### **neutropenia**

Abnormally low concentration of *neutrophils* in the blood.

*Note:* Neutropenia is associated with an increased risk of infection.

### **neutrophil**

polymorphonuclear leucocyte

Granular *leukocyte*, the major circulating phagocytic polymorphonuclear *granulocyte*, having a nucleus with three to five lobes and fine cytoplasmic granules stainable by neutral dyes.

*Note 1:* The cells have properties of *chemotaxis*, adherence to *immune complexes*, and *phagocytosis*.

*Note 2:* The cells are involved in a variety of inflammatory processes including late-phase *allergic* reactions and are also able to mediate *antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)*.

Modified from [1]

See also *phagocyte*.

### **neutrophil activation**

Change in morphology and behavior of a *neutrophil* resulting from exposure to a *cytokine*, *chemokine*, cellular *ligand*, or soluble factor.



1  
2  
3 See also *lymphocyte activation*.

4  
5  
6 **nitric oxide**

7 Generic term for nitrogen monoxide species, including nitrosonium ion, nitric oxide  
8 radical, etc., that can function in a cell-signaling capacity.  
9

10  
11 **nondepleting antibody**

12 Cell surface *antibody* that does not provoke attack by *killer cells* and thus does not  
13 provoke depletion of a group of cells in the body, usually referring to *B cells*.  
14

15  
16 **non-Hodgkin lymphoma**

17 Any of various malignant *lymphomas* characterized by the absence of *Reed-Sternberg*  
18 *cells* and producing symptoms similar to those of *Hodgkin disease*.  
19

20  
21 **non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse**

22 Genetically modified mouse with a susceptibility to spontaneous development of  
23 *automimmune diabetes mellitus type I*.  
24

25  
26 **non-self**

27 Of, relating to, or designating a cell or tissue that has not been produced by the  
28 individual organism.

29 *Note:* Non-self molecules are identified by the *immune system* as foreign or  
30 abnormal, thus provoking an *immune response*.  
31

32  
33 **nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT)**

34 Transcription factor involved in rapid cell response to stress, such as injury or invading  
35 pathogens, and in cell proliferation and survival.  
36

37  
38 **nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NFκB)**

39 Protein complex that controls the transcription of genes involved in *cytokine* production,  
40 *cellular adhesion*, *inflammation*, and *apoptosis*.

41 *Note:* NFκB is found in almost all animal cell types and is involved in cellular  
42 responses to stimuli such as stress, cytokines, free radicals, ultraviolet  
43 irradiation, oxidized low-density lipoprotein (LDL), and bacterial or viral  
44 *antigens*.  
45

46  
47 **nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein 1, 2 (NOD1, NOD2)**

48 Any member of a family of human intracellular proteins involved in the detection of  
49 invasive bacteria and activation of the *NFκB* transcription factor pathway.

50 *Note:* In epithelial cells, NOD1 is essential for sensing intracellular Gram-negative  
51 bacteria through a tripeptide motif in the bacterial peptidoglycan.  
52

53 After [26]

54  
55 **nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein (NOD)-like receptor**  
56 (NLR)

57 NOD-like receptor protein (NLRP)  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Cytosolic protein that contains a central nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain, an  
4 N-terminal effector-binding domain and C-terminal leucine-rich repeats (LRR).

5 *Note 1:* NOD-like *receptors* have been implicated as mediators of protective  
6 *immune responses* against intracellular pathogens.

7  
8 *Note 2:* Genetic associations of polymorphisms in NOD-like receptor genes with  
9 complex chronic inflammatory barrier diseases, such as *Crohn disease* and  
10 *asthma*, and with rare auto-inflammatory syndromes including familial cold  
11 urticaria, Muckle-Wells syndrome and *Blau syndrome* have been described.

12 See also *NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3 (NALP3,*  
13 *NLRP3).*

14 [27]

### 15 16 17 **nude mouse**

18 Mouse which is *T cell*-deficient due to a homozygous gene defect (*nu/nu*) resulting in  
19 the absence of a *thymus* (and also lack of body hair).

20 [3]

### 21 22 23 **null cell**

24 *Lymphocyte* with neither *T-* nor *B-cell differentiation antigens* on its surface.

### 25 26 27 **OKT3**

28 Brand name for muromonab-CD3, an *immunosuppressant* drug given intravenously to  
29 reverse acute *rejection* of transplanted organs, including the heart, kidneys and liver.

30 *Note:* OKT3 was the first *monoclonal antibody* used to treat patients.

31 See also *antibody therapy*.

### 32 33 34 **oligoclonal**

35 Having a few different *clones*, or the product of a few different clones.

36 After [3]

### 37 38 39 **oncofetal antigen**

40 *Antigen* whose expression is normally restricted to the fetus but which may be  
41 expressed during malignancy in adults.

42 [3]

### 43 44 45 **opsonin**

46 Substance, e.g., *antibody* or C3b, which enhances *phagocytosis* by promoting adhesion  
47 of the *antigen* to the *phagocyte*.

48 [3]

### 49 50 51 **opsonization**

52 Coating of *antigen* with an *opsonin* to enhance *phagocytosis*.

53 *Note:* The interaction of opsonized complexes with *Fc receptors* or *complement*  
54 *receptors* facilitates their uptake by the receptor-bearing *phagocytic cells*.

55 After [1]

**oral tolerance**

Orally induced and immune-mediated non-responsiveness.

[1]

See also *tolerance*.

**oral vaccination**

*Immunization* against a pathogen with a *vaccine* administered by mouth.

**Ouchterlony technique**

Ouchterlony double diffusion assay

Double-radial immunodiffusion procedure for the detection of *precipitating antibodies*.

*Note:* Method of high diagnostic specificity but low sensitivity.

After [1]

**oxidative burst**

See *respiratory burst*.

**P-nucleotides**

Palindromic nucleotide sequences generated at the junctions between *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V)*, *diversity (D)* and *joining (J) gene* segments during gene rearrangement.

[3]

**P-selectin**

Cell *adhesion molecule* expressed on the surface of activated endothelial cells and *platelets*.

**pancytopenia**

Decrease in the number of red blood cells, white blood cells, and *platelets*.

**paracortical area**

paracortex

Region of a *lymph node* enriched in *T lymphocytes*.

**paracrine**

Type of signaling in which a cell secretes a chemical messenger that binds to *receptors* on nearby cells, leading to changes in those cells. Thus, describing or relating to a regulatory cell that secretes an agonist into intercellular spaces in which it diffuses to a target cell other than that which produces it, or describing or relating to such an agonist.

After [26]

See also *autocrine*.

**paramone**

*Paracrine* agonist.

**paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome**

1  
2  
3 Any of several *autoimmune diseases* that are caused by tumor-induced perturbations of  
4 the *immune system* with damaging effects on various organ systems (e.g. cancer-  
5 associated retinopathy, paraneoplastic neurological syndromes, paraneoplastic  
6 cutaneous syndromes). In most cases, *autoantibodies* generated by antitumor *immunity*  
7 are responsible for the tissue injury.  
8

9 [1]

10 See also *Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS)*.  
11

### 12 **paratope**

13 Site in the variable region of an *antibody* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* that binds to an  
14 *epitope* of an *antigen*.  
15  
16

### 17 **particle immunoassay**

18 *Immunoassay* in which *antibody* is bound to the surface of microspheres. After  
19 incubation with the *antigen*-containing biological fluid, and subsequent manipulation,  
20 detection is usually performed by *flow cytometry*.  
21  
22

### 23 **passive cutaneous anaphylaxis (PCA) test**

24 Assay for *allergenicity* in which an *antibody* is injected intradermally into a test animal  
25 followed at a later time (anywhere from 3-48 h) with an intravenous injection of a  
26 mixture of a test *antigen* and a dye (typically Evans blue). Increased vascular  
27 permeability at the site of antigen-antibody reaction is visualized by extravasation of the  
28 dye.  
29  
30

### 31 **passive hemagglutination**

32 Method of measuring *antibody titer*, in which *antigen*-coated *erythrocytes* are  
33 agglutinated (see *agglutination*) by adding antibody specific for the antigen.  
34  
35

### 36 **passive immunization**

37 *Immunization* of an individual by the transfer of *antibody* synthesized in another  
38 individual.  
39  
40

### 41 **patch test**

42 Test for *allergy* that is performed by placing the suspected *allergen* in direct contact with  
43 the skin or *mucosa*.  
44  
45

### 46 **pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP)**

47 Describing repetitive motifs of molecules such as lipopolysaccharide, peptidoglycan,  
48 lipoteichoic acids and mannans, which are widely expressed by microbial pathogens but  
49 are not present on *host* tissues. They are therefore utilized by the *pattern recognition*  
50 *receptors (PRRs)* of the *immune system* to distinguish pathogens from *self-antigens*.  
51

52 [3]

### 53 **pattern recognition receptor (PRR)**

54 *Receptor* found on many different cell types in the *immune system* that enables them to  
55 recognize *pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)*. Amongst the large  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 number of different PRRs are the mannose receptor (CD206), *macrophage* scavenger  
4 receptor (CD204) and the *Toll-like receptors*.

5  
6 [3]

7 *Note:* Many of the *NOD-like receptors (NLRs)* are thought to serve as PRRs.  
8

9  
10 **pauci-immune**

11 Referring to *vasculitis* characterized by relatively little deposition of *immunoglobulin (Ig)*  
12 and *complement* factors, usually describing a form of *glomerulonephritis*.  
13

14 **pemphigus**

15 pemphigus vulgaris

16 Rare, serious *autoimmune disease* marked by successive outbreaks of blisters, which  
17 appear suddenly and disappear leaving pigmented spots.

18 *Note:* Other mucous membranes, as well as the skin, are usually affected and the  
19 disease may be fatal.  
20  
21

22 **peptide tetramer**

23 Structure consisting of four identical *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*-encoded  
24 peptides, presenting four binding sites for biotin attached to the tail of the MHC  
25 molecule, and held together by fluorescent streptavidin.  
26  
27

28 **peptide vaccine**

29 Preparation of an immunologically active peptide found in a disease-causing organism  
30 or substance, or any of their products, which is specially treated for use in *vaccination*.  
31  
32

33 **peptide-binding groove**

34 Structural feature found in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* and *class II*  
35 heterodimeric proteins that can bind endogenous peptides.  
36

37 See also *antigen-presenting groove*.  
38

39 **perforin**

40 Molecule produced by *cytotoxic T cells* and *natural killer (NK) cells* that, like  
41 *complement* component C9, polymerizes to form a pore in the membrane of the *target*  
42 *cell* leading to cell death.  
43

44 [3]  
45

46 **periarteriolar lymphoid sheath (PALS)**

47 *Lymphoid tissue* that forms the *white pulp* of the *spleen*.  
48

49 [3]  
50

51 **periodontitis**

52 Inflammatory reaction of the tissues surrounding a tooth (periodontium), usually  
53 resulting from the extension of gingival *inflammation* (gingivitis) into the periodontium,  
54 and involving inflammation and infection of the ligaments and bones that support the  
55 teeth.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

**peripheral blood leukocyte (PBL)**

*Leukocyte* derived from the peripheral circulatory system.

**peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC)**

*Monocyte* produced by the *bone marrow* from *hematopoietic stem cell* precursors, circulating in the bloodstream for about one to three days before moving into tissues throughout the body.

*Note:* PBMCs constitute between three to eight percent of the *leukocytes* in the blood. In the tissues monocytes mature into different types of *macrophages* at different anatomical locations [see *macrophage, resident(ial)*].

**peripheral lymphoid organ**

Any of the lymphoid organs (see *lymphoid tissue*) other than the *thymus*.

**peripheral neuropathy, autoimmune**

Acute or chronic inflammatory neuropathy leading to demyelination and axonal damage of nerves and nerve roots associated with high-titered *autoantibodies* against gangliosides [e.g., *Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS)*, Miller-Fisher syndrome, acute sensory ataxic neuropathy].

[1]

**peripheral tolerance**

Specific immunological *tolerance* occurring outside of the primary lymphoid organs (see *lymphoid tissue*).

[3]

**pernicious anemia**

Disease in which the *erythrocytes* are abnormally formed, due to an inability to absorb vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. True pernicious anemia refers specifically to a disorder of atrophied parietal cells leading to absent intrinsic factor, resulting in an inability to absorb B<sub>12</sub>.

*Note 1:* This is the end stage of 10–15% of *autoimmune* gastritis.

*Note 2:* This disease is associated with a variety of autoimmune endocrine diseases (e.g., *Hashimoto thyroiditis*, *Addison disease* and autoimmune myasthenic syndromes).

Modified from [1]

**pexophagy**

*Autophagy* selective for degradation of peroxisomes, which can be separated into macropexophagy and micropexophagy.

**Peyer's patch**

Part of the *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)* and found as a distinct lymphoid nodule, mainly in the small intestine.

After [3]

**phage antibody library**

1  
2  
3 Collection of *cloned antibody variable (V) region* gene sequences that can be expressed  
4 as *Fab* or *scFv* fusion proteins with bacteriophage coat proteins. These can be  
5 displayed on the surface of the phages. The gene encoding a recombinant *monoclonal*  
6 *antibody* is enclosed in the phage particle and can be selected from the library by  
7 binding of the phage to specific *antigen*.  
8

9 [3]  
10

### 11 **phage display library**

12 See *phage antibody library*.  
13

### 14 **phagocyte**

15 Cell, especially of *monocyte/macrophage* or *neutrophil* lineage, that is specialized for  
16 the engulfment of cellular and particulate matter.  
17

18 After [3]  
19

### 20 **phagocytic activity assay**

21 phagocytosis assay  
22

23 Method of quantifying *phagocytosis* in which yeast cells, stained with May-Grünwald  
24 stain, are incubated with *macrophages*, and subsequently, after a fixed time, yeast cells  
25 engulfed in the macrophages are counted.  
26

### 27 **phagocytosis**

28 Process by which particulate material is endocytosed by a cell.  
29

30 See also *endocytosis*, *pinocytosis*.  
31

32 [5]  
33

### 34 **phagocytosis assay**

35 See *phagocytic activity assay*.  
36

### 37 **phagolysosome**

38 Intracellular vacuole where killing and digestion of phagocytosed material occurs  
39 following the fusion of a *phagosome* with a *lysosome*.  
40

41 [3]  
42

43 See also *phagocytosis*.  
44

### 45 **phagosome**

46 Intracellular vacuole produced following invagination of the cell membrane around  
47 phagocytosed material.  
48

49 [3]  
50

51 See also *phagocytosis*.  
52

### 53 **Philadelphia chromosome**

54 Chromosome resulting from a reciprocal translocation between human chromosomes 9  
55 and 22, most commonly associated with *chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)*.  
56

57 See also *ABL oncogene*.  
58  
59  
60

**phorbol myristate acetate (PMA)**

tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (TPA)

*Mitogenic* phorbol ester that directly stimulates *protein kinase C (PKC)* and acts as a tumor promoter.

[3]

**phospholipase C $\gamma$  (PLC- $\gamma$ )**

Enzyme that cleaves phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate into diacylglycerol and inositol trisphosphate, leading to the activation of two major cell signaling pathways.

*Note:* One consequence of the signaling is *B- and T lymphocyte activation*.

**photoallergy**

*Type IV hypersensitivity* reaction in which photoactivation of a substance produces a *hapten* that then acts as a *sensitizer*.

**photocontact dermatitis**

Type of *contact dermatitis* arising when substances are transformed into either irritants or *allergens* upon exposure to light.

*Note:* Aftershave lotions, sunscreens, and certain topical sulfa drugs may be changed into allergens, while coal tar and certain oils used in manufacturing may become irritants after exposure to sunlight.

**photosensitivity**

Skin reddening due to an abnormal reaction to sunlight, characteristic of *systemic autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*], and cutaneous and subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus.

[1]

**phototoxicity test**

Procedure used to identify the phototoxic potential of a test substance. The substance is administered either *systemically* or topically on the skin, and light is subsequently shone on the skin to photoexcite the substance.

*Note:* There is also an in vitro test using photoexposure of treated Balb c/3T3 cells followed by viability testing.

**phytohemagglutinin (PHA)**

Plant *lectin* that acts as a *T cell mitogen*.

[3]

**pinocytosis**

Type of *endocytosis* in which soluble material is taken up by the cell in a liquid phase and incorporated into vesicles.

After [5]

**placental barrier**

See *blood-placental barrier*.



**plantibody**

Animal *antibody* (or fragment thereof), expressed in a genetically-modified plant.

**plaque assay**

See *anti-sheep red blood cell (SRBC) IgM response assay*.

**plaque forming cell (PFC)**

*Antibody-secreting plasma cell* detected *in vitro* by its ability to produce a 'plaque' of lysed *antigen-sensitized erythrocytes* in the presence of *complement*.

[3]

See also *plaque assay*.

**plasma**

1. Fluid component of blood in which the blood cells and *platelets* are suspended.
2. Fluid component of semen produced by the accessory glands, the seminal vesicles, the prostate, and the bulbo-urethral glands.
3. Cell substance outside the nucleus (i.e., the cytoplasm).

[5]

**plasmablast**

Highly proliferative cell that is a developmental intermediate between small *B lymphocytes* and *immunoglobulin (Ig)-secreting mature plasma cells*.

**plasma cell**

Terminally differentiated *B lymphocyte*, with little or no capacity for mitotic division, that actively secretes large amounts of *antibody*.

*Note:* Plasma cells have eccentric nuclei, abundant cytoplasm, and distinct perinuclear haloes. The cytoplasm contains dense rough endoplasmic reticulum and a large Golgi complex.

Modified from [1]

**plasmacytoid dendritic cell**

*Dendritic cell* of distinct lineage, found in blood and peripheral *lymphoid tissue*, which secretes large amounts of *interferon (IFN)* upon activation.

After [2]

**plasmacytoma**

Mass of neoplastic monoclonal *plasma cells* growing in bone or soft tissue.

**plasma exchange**

See *plasmapheresis*.

**plasmapheresis**

plasma exchange

Technique of extracorporeal separation of blood cells from *plasma*, with return of the

1  
2  
3 cells to the patient.

4 *Note:* Frequently used to remove *antibodies* in *autoimmune disease*.

6  
7 **platelet**

8 thrombocyte

9 Small irregular or disc-shaped cell found in large numbers in mammalian blood,  
10 essential for blood clotting.

12  
13 **platelet activating factor (PAF)**

14 Alkyl phospholipid released by a variety of cell types including *mast cells* and *basophils*,  
15 which has immunoregulatory effects on *lymphocytes* and *monocytes/macrophages*, as  
16 well as causing *platelet* aggregation and *degranulation*.

17 After [3]

19  
20 **platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)**

21 Protein synthesized by *platelets* that is released into the *serum* during blood clotting.

22 *Note:* PDGF represents the major growth factor in human serum and is a potent  
23 *mitogen* for connective tissue and glial cells.

25  
26 **pluripotent stem cell**

27 Self-replicating cell capable of developing into cells and tissues of the three primary  
28 embryonic germ layers.

29  
30 **pokeweed mitogen (PWM)**

31 Plant *lectin* which is a *T cell*-dependent *B cell mitogen*.

32 [3]

34  
35 **pollenosis**

36 See *hay fever*.

38  
39 **polyarteritis nodosa**

40 disseminated necrotizing periarteritis

41 panarteritis

42 periarteritis

43 periarteritis nodosa

44 Systemic disease characterized by widespread *inflammation* of small and medium-sized  
45 arteries in which many of the foci are nodular.

47  
48 **polyclonal**

49 Many different *clones*, or the product of many different clones, e.g., polyclonal  
50 *antiserum*.

51 [3]

53  
54 **polyclonal activator**

55 Substance that induces *activation* of multiple clones of *B lymphocytes* or *T lymphocytes*.

56 After [7]

See also *mitogen*.

### **polyendocrinopathy, autoimmune**

*Autoimmune disease* affecting multiple endocrine organs.

*Note 1:* (i) The autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type 1 is characterized by mucocutaneous candidiasis in association with endocrine manifestation (also called APECED syndrome, autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy).

(ii) The autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type 2 exhibits any combination of adrenal insufficiency (see *Addison disease*), *diabetes mellitus type 1*, lymphocytic thyroiditis (see *thyroiditis, autoimmune*), *hypoparathyroidism*, and gonadal failure.

*Note 2:* In both types, organ-specific *autoantibodies* against a variety of endocrine glands are detectable.

After [1]

### **poly I:C**

Polyinosinic:polycytidylic acid, a synthetic immunostimulant mimicking viral double stranded RNA.

### **poly ICLC**

Polyinosinic:polycytidylic acid, poly-L-lysine, and carboxymethylcellulose (letter roots of the acronym underlined), a synthetic immunostimulant mimicking viral double stranded RNA.

### **poly-Ig receptor**

*Receptor* molecule that specifically binds *J chain*-containing polymeric *immunoglobulin (Ig)*, i.e., dimeric secretory *immunoglobulin A (IgA)* and pentameric *immunoglobulin M (IgM)*, and transports it across *mucosal* epithelium.

[3]

### **polymorphism (general)**

Variability in shape or structure

### **polymorphism (in genetics)**

Occurring in more than one form within a species owing to the existence of multiple *alleles* at a particular genetic locus.

### **polymorphism (in metabolism)**

polymorphia (in metabolism)

Interindividual variations in metabolism of endogenous and exogenous compounds due to genetic influences, leading to enhanced side effects, or to toxicity of drugs, or to different clinical effects (as in variation in metabolism of steroid hormones).

After [5]

### **polymorphonuclear granulocyte**

1  
2  
3 See *polymorphonuclear leukocyte*.

4  
5  
6 **polymorphonuclear leukocyte**

7 Mature *leukocyte* with granular cytoplasm and a segmented and irregularly shaped  
8 nucleus.

9 *Note 1:* It is the predominating leukocyte in the blood and is found in the tissues  
10 during acute inflammatory processes and in the superficial surface aspects  
11 of a lesion during subacute or chronic *inflammation*.

12 *Note 2:* There are three major types: *neutrophils*, *eosinophils*, and *basophils*.

13  
14  
15 **polymyositis**

16 Disorder characterized by *inflammation* and degeneration of skeletal muscle, causing  
17 pain, weakness, and wasting in affected (usually proximal) muscles.

18  
19  
20 **popliteal lymph node assay (PLNA)**

21 Test for immunosensitization measuring popliteal *lymph node* hyperplasia after  
22 subcutaneous injection of a test substance into the footpad of the hindpaw of a rodent.

23  
24  
25 **positive selection**

26 Selection of those developing *T cells* in the *thymus* that are able to recognize self-*major*  
27 *histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*. This occurs by preventing *apoptosis* in  
28 these cells.

29 [3]

30  
31  
32 **pre-B cell**

33 Cell in the *B lymphocyte* lineage that has rearranged *heavy chain* but not *light chain*  
34 genes; it expresses surrogate light chains and m heavy chain at its surface in  
35 conjunction with *immunoglobulins* Ig a and Ig b. All these molecules comprise the pre-B  
36 cell *receptor* (pre-BCR).

37 After [7]

38  
39  
40 **precipitating antibody**

41 *Antibody* that is capable of reacting with a soluble *antigen* with the formation of an  
42 insoluble antigen/antibody complex.

43 [26]

44 See also *precipitin*.

45  
46  
47 **precipitin**

48 Precipitate of *antibody* and multivalent *antigen* due to the formation of high molecular  
49 weight complexes.

50 [3]

51  
52  
53 **pre-T cell**

54 thymocyte

55 Cell differentiating into a *T lymphocyte* in the *thymus* gland.

56 *Note:* During maturation thymocytes express on their surface a precursor *T-cell*

1  
2  
3 *receptor (TCR)* called a pre-T-cell receptor, and both *CD8* and *CD4* proteins  
4 (*double-positive cells*). At the same time they slowly migrate from the outer  
5 cortex of the thymus to the inner medullary region. Only the 2% of cells  
6 capable of distinguishing *self-antigen* survive to maturity in the *medulla*.  
7 Here they become *single-positive cells*, expressing exclusively *CD4* or *CD8*  
8 surface proteins, and are exported from the thymus in the bloodstream to  
9 become *helper T cells (Th)* and *cytotoxic T cells*, respectively.

10  
11 After [28]

12  
13  
14 **prick test**

15 Test carried out by placing a drop of a suspected *allergenic* extract on the skin of the  
16 forearm and gently pricking it into the upper layer of skin. Sensitivity to a substance is  
17 indicated if the spot swells slightly and becomes red within about fifteen minutes.

18 *Note:* A positive result is far from conclusive and, at best, gives a vague indication  
19 of allergenicity. The prick test is inappropriate as a test for food allergens.

20  
21  
22 **primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)**

23 *Autoimmune* liver disease that results in the destruction of bile ducts, leading to fibrosis  
24 and cirrhosis.

25 *Note:* Primary biliary cirrhosis-specific *antibodies* are *antimitochondrial antibodies*  
26 (*AMA*) directed against proteins of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex  
27 (mainly the E2 subunit).

28  
29 After [1]

30  
31  
32 **primary challenge**

33 See *primary response*.

34  
35 **primary immune response**

36 *Immune response* to the first encounter with an *antigen*, characterized by slow  
37 production of *antibody* molecules and the *priming* of *lymphoid tissue* in readiness for the  
38 production of a *secondary immune response* on subsequent *challenge* with the same  
39 antigen.

40 *Note:* The primary response is generally weak, has a long induction phase or lag  
41 period, consists primarily of the release of *immunoglobulin M (IgM)*  
42 antibodies, and generates immunologic *memory*.

43  
44  
45  
46 **primary immunization**

47 First introduction of a *vaccine* into the body for the purposes of inducing *immunity*.

48 See also *primary immune response*.

49  
50  
51 **primary lymphoid follicle**

52 Region of a *secondary lymphoid organ* containing predominantly unstimulated *B*  
53 *lymphocytes* that develops into a *germinal center* following *antigen* stimulation.

54 [7]

55 See also *lymphoid follicle*.

**primary lymphoid organ**

Site at which *immunocompetent lymphocytes* develop, i.e., *bone marrow* and *thymus* in mammals.

[3]

**primary myxedema**

Atrophic form of diffuse autoimmune thyroiditis.

See *thyroiditis, autoimmune*.

[1]

**primary response**

See *primary immune response*.

**primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)**

Chronic, non-bacterial, inflammatory narrowing of the bile ducts.

*Note:* Often associated with ulcerative colitis [see *inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)*].

After [1]

**prime (vb)**

Process of giving an initial *sensitization* to *antigen*.

[3]

**priming**

See *prime (vb)*.

**privileged site**

See *immunologically privileged site*.

**professional antigen-presenting cell**

Highly efficient *antigen-presenting cell (APC)*, generally referring to *dendritic cells*, *B cells*, or *macrophages*.

*Note:* Other cells, e.g., *fibroblasts* and endothelial cells, that do not constitutively express *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules* may be induced to do so by certain *cytokines* and are sometimes referred to as non-professional antigen-presenting cells.

**programmed cell death**

See *apoptosis*.

**progressive systemic sclerosis**

*Systemic autoimmune disease* marked by formation of hyalinized and thickened collagenous fibrous tissue, with thickening and adhesion of skin to underlying tissues, especially of the hands and face and vascular alterations.

See also *scleroderma*.

**proinflammatory cytokine**

*Cytokine* that initiates or enhances *inflammation*.

**prolactin**

Hormone that is involved in several aspects of endocrine physiology, including stimulation of milk production, which also regulates proliferation and differentiation of a variety of cells in the *immune system*.

*Note:* May play a role in the pathogenesis and clinical expression of *autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*].

After [1]

**proliferation assay**

Any test that determines the effect on increase in cell number of a test agent such as a *cytokine* or *mitogen*.

**properdin**

Relatively heat-labile, normal *serum* protein (a *euglobulin*) that, in the presence of *complement* component C3 and magnesium ions, is involved in the *alternative pathway of complement activation*, and acts nonspecifically against gram-negative bacteria and viruses and may contribute to the lysis of *erythrocytes*.

*Note:* It migrates as a  $\beta$ 3-globulin and, although not an *antibody*, may act in conjunction with complement-fixing antibody.

**prostaglandin**

Acidic lipid derived from arachidonic acid that is able to increase vascular permeability, mediate fever, and can both stimulate and inhibit immunological responses.

[3]

**proteasome**

Cytoplasmic and nuclear multiprotein proteolytic complex involved in degradation of excess, damaged, or misfolded proteins.

*Note:* Cytoplasmic proteasome is important in *antigen processing and presentation* by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* molecules.

**protectin**

CD59

Member of the *Ly-6* family of cell surface molecules that prevents insertion of the *membrane attack complex (MAC)* into the membrane, thereby protecting cells from *complement*-induced lysis.

**protective immunity**

Protection against infectious agents conferred by *vaccination*.

**protein A**

*Staphylococcus aureus* cell wall protein that binds to the *Fc region* of *immunoglobulin G (IgG)*.

1  
2  
3 [3]  
4  
5

6 **proteinase 3 (PR3)**

7 Multifunctional enzyme of azurophilic granules of *neutrophils* and *monocytes* and the  
8 major target of *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ANCA)*.

9 *Note:* PR3 *autoantibodies* are diagnostic markers for *Wegener granulomatosis*  
10 (*WG*) and are involved in the pathogenesis of this disease. They are also  
11 found in patients with other *autoimmune systemic* vasculitic diseases.  
12

13 After [1]  
14

15 **protein G**

16 Streptococcal cell wall protein that binds to the *Fc region* of *immunoglobulin G (IgG)*,  
17 with a wider species specificity than *protein A*.  
18

19 **protein kinase C (PKC)**

20 Member of a kinase family with broad substrate specificity, activated by calcium,  
21 diacylglycerol, and (or) *phorbol myristate acetate (PMA)*.  
22

23 *Note:* It is activated during *B lymphocyte* and *T lymphocyte* activation.  
24  
25

26 **prozone effect**

27 Loss of *immunoprecipitation* or *agglutination* that occurs when *antibody* concentration is  
28 increased to an extent that the antibody is in such excess that it is no longer able to  
29 effectively cross-link the *antigen*. A similar phenomenon may occur in antigen excess.  
30

31 [3]  
32

33 **pseudoallergy**

34 pseudoallergic reaction

35 Inflammatory or *anaphylactic* reaction with symptoms similar to an *allergy* but not  
36 involving an *antigen-specific immune response*, e.g., salicylate intolerance, reaction to  
37 contrast reagents.  
38

39 *Note:* Causes include direct *histamine* release and (or) *complement* activation.  
40

41 **psoriasis**

42 Skin disorder that has a hereditary component and is characterized by erythematous  
43 patches covered with silvery scales, especially on the elbows, knees, and scalp.  
44

45 *Note:* Psoriasis is associated with excessively rapid proliferation of *keratinocytes*  
46 which mature in less than a week.  
47

48 **psoriatic**

49 Of, relating to, or associated with *psoriasis*; affected with psoriasis.  
50  
51

52 **purified protein derivative (PPD)**

53 Partially purified derivative of *tuberculin* used in the *Mantoux test* for tuberculosis.  
54

55 **purpura**

56 Purple discoloration occurring in patches on the skin, mucus membranes, or organs.  
57  
58  
59  
60



See also *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)*.

### pyrogen

Any substance that produces fever.

[5]

### pyrogen test

Any of various tests used to determine whether an agent, usually an infusion or injection fluid, is free of *pyrogens*.

*Note:* Examples include i) the rabbit test, observing whether the body temperature of the animal increases after administration of the agent, ii) the *Limulus test*, measuring the effects of *endotoxins* on a biological system, and iii) in vitro tests, observing the release of *interleukin-1 $\beta$*  from human blood cells during incubation with the test fluid.

### Qa antigen

'Non-classical' *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule* in mice.

[3]

### radial immunodiffusion

Mancini immunodiffusion

Method for quantifying an *antigen* by measuring the diameters of circular precipitates around an antigen-spiked cavity in an *antibody*-containing agar gel.

### radioallergosorbent test (RAST)

Solid-phase *radioimmunoassay (RIA)* for detecting *immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody* specific for a particular *antigen*.

[4]

### radioimmunoassay (RIA)

Technique for measuring the level of a biologic substance in a sample, by measuring the binding of *antigen* to radioactively labeled *antibody* (or vice versa).

[7]

### radioimmunoconjugate

Biochemical *conjugate* consisting of an immune-targeting molecule such as an *antibody* or antibody fragment together with a *cytotoxic radionuclide*.

[3]

### Raynaud phenomenon

Intermittent bilateral attacks of vasospasm and ischemia of the fingers or toes and sometimes of the ears and nose, marked by a severe pallor and often accompanied by paresthesia and pain.

*Note 1:* It is brought on characteristically by cold or emotional stimuli and relieved by heat, and may be due to an underlying disease or anatomic abnormality.

*Note 2:* The phenomenon is more common in women than men and occurs in most

1  
2  
3 patients with *progressive systemic sclerosis (SSc)*, *mixed connective tissue*  
4 *disease (MCTD)*, and *polymyositis/scleroderma overlap syndrome*.

5  
6 *Note 3:* When the condition is *idiopathic* or *primary*, it is termed *Raynaud disease*.

7 After [18]

8  
9 **reactive airways dysfunction syndrome (RADS)**

10 Syndrome characterized by reversible airflow limitation and complicating bronchial  
11 hyperresponsiveness induced by acute exposure to high concentrations of non-  
12 *sensitizer* irritant gases.

13  
14  
15 **reactive oxygen intermediate (ROI)**

16 See *reactive oxygen species (ROS)*.

17  
18  
19 **reactive oxygen species (ROS)**

20 Intermediates in the reduction of molecular dioxygen,  $O_2$ , to water.

21 *Note:* Examples are superoxide ( $O_2^{\cdot-}$ ), hydrogen peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ), and hydroxyl  
22 ( $HO\cdot$ ).

23  
24 **reagin**

25 Historic term for *antibodies* of the *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* class.

26  
27 **recall antigen**

28 Substance recognized by *memory cells* that stimulates rapid (*secondary*) *immune*  
29 *responses*, often associated with *hypersensitivity*.

30  
31  
32 **receptor**

33 Molecule that binds to a *ligand*, thus leading to biochemical signaling inside the cell.

34 *Note:* Receptors are usually transmembrane molecules that bind ligands at the  
35 extracellular surface (e.g., *growth factor* receptors) or soluble intracellular  
36 molecules (e.g., steroid hormone receptors).

37  
38  
39 **recombinant antibody**

40 *Antibody* fragment manufactured by use of genetically modified microorganisms.

41  
42 **recombination-activating gene (RAG)**

43 Gene whose products are involved in *V(D)J recombination* in *B cells* and *T cells*. Two  
44 such genes that have been identified are RAG-1 and RAG-2.

45  
46  
47 **recombination signal sequence (RSS)**

48 Any conserved heptamer (7-nucleotide)-nonamer (9-nucleotide) sequence, separated  
49 by a 12 or 23 base spacer, which occurs 3' of variable gene segments, 5' and 3' of  
50 diversity gene segments, and 5' of joining gene segments, in both *immunoglobulin (Ig)*  
51 and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* genes. It functions as a recognition sequence for the  
52 recombinase enzymes that mediate the gene rearrangement process involved in the  
53 generation of *lymphocyte antigen receptor* diversity.

54 After [3]

**red pulp**

splenic pulp

Parenchymal tissue of the *spleen* consisting of cords of cells and sinuses infiltrated with *erythrocytes* and responsible for removal of aged or damaged erythrocytes.

See also *white pulp*.

**Reed-Sternberg cell**

Large transformed *lymphocyte*, often binucleate, considered pathognomonic of *Hodgkin lymphoma*.

**regulated upon activation normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES)**

*Chemokine* secreted by *T cells* and *macrophages* upon stimulation by *mitogens*, which acts as a chemoattractant and stimulates *eosinophils* and *basophils*.

**regulatory idiotope**

*Antibody* or *T-cell receptor (TCR) idiotope* capable of regulating *immune responses* via interaction with *lymphocytes* bearing complementary idiotopes (anti-idiotopes).

[3]

**regulatory T cell (Treg)**

*T cell* that controls the maintenance of normal immune homeostasis. Treg cells are involved in controlling (anergizing or counter-regulating) autoreactive cells that escaped from *thymic negative selection*.

See also *CD8+ T suppressor cell*, *CD4+CD25+ T cell*.

[1]

**rejection (in immunology)**

*Immune response* leading to destruction of a transplanted organ or tissue.

See also *acute rejection*, *chronic rejection*, *graft rejection*.

**resistance (in immunology)**

Ability of an organism to withstand an infection.

*Note:* Bacterial resistance is the ability of a bacterium to grow despite the presence of an antibiotic.

**respiratory burst**

Generation of *cytotoxic* superoxide from dioxygen due to increased NADPH oxidase activity, typically occurring in activated *neutrophils*.

See also *neutrophil activation*.

**respiratory hypersensitivity assay**

Test of the ability of a substance to induce *hyperreactivity* in the airways, typically measured as an increase in the rate of respiration of guinea pigs during inhalation of the substance.

**restriction (in immunology)**

1  
2  
3 See *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction*.

4  
5  
6 **reticuloendothelial system (RES)**

7 See *mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS)*.

8  
9 **reverse immunology**

10 High throughput procedure where information on potential *immunogenic* tumor proteins  
11 is gained from the amino acid sequences of gene products specifically expressed by the  
12 tumor, followed by predicted fitting of putative *antigenic* peptides to a *peptide-binding*  
13 *groove*, and finally experimental verification.

14  
15  
16 **Rhesus (Rh) factor**

17 Protein expressed on the surface of *erythrocytes*, especially the D *antigen* of the Rh  
18 *blood group*.

19 *Note:* Rh positivity is a common cause of *transfusion* reaction and hemolytic  
20 disease of the newborn.

21  
22  
23 **rheumatic fever**

24 Inflammatory disease that may develop following a streptococcal infection such as strep  
25 throat, and may affect the heart, joints, skin, and brain.

26  
27  
28 **rheumatoid arthritis (RA)**

29 Episodic inflammatory *systemic* disease with *autoimmune* pathogenetic mechanisms.

30 *Note:* It primarily affects the joints, causing symmetrical lesions and severe  
31 damage to the affected joints. RA is the most common form of inflammatory  
32 joint disease (prevalence about 0.5–1%).

33  
34 After [1]

35  
36 **rheumatoid factor**

37 *Immunoglobulins IgM, IgG and IgA autoantibodies* to the *Fc region* of IgG.

38 *Note:* Although detectable in various diseases, rheumatoid factor is used as a  
39 classification criterion of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*.

40  
41 Modified from [3]

42  
43 **rhinitis**

44 *Inflammation* of the mucous membrane of the nose.

45  
46  
47 **rhinitis, allergic**

48 Nasal discharge resulting from an *allergic* response.

49  
50 **rocket electrophoresis**

51 Technique in which a test *antigen* is electrophoretically driven through an *antibody-*  
52 *containing gel*. The rocket-shaped tails of precipitation give information on the antigen  
53 concentration.

54  
55  
56 **rosette**

1  
2  
3 Particles or cells bound to the surface of a *lymphocyte* (e.g., sheep *erythrocytes* around  
4 a human *T cell*).

5 [3]  
6  
7

### 8 **scFv**

9 Single chain molecule composed of the *variable (V) regions* of an *antibody heavy* and  
10 *light chain* joined together by a flexible linker.

11 [3]  
12  
13

### 14 **sarcoid**

15 See *sarcoidosis*.  
16  
17

### 18 **sarcoidosis**

19 Chronic, progressive, generalized *granulomatous* reticulosis of unknown etiology,  
20 involving almost any organ or tissue, including the skin, lungs, lymph nodes, liver,  
21 spleen, eyes, and small bones of the hands and feet. It is characterized histologically by  
22 the presence in all affected organs or tissues of noncaseating epithelioid cell tubercles.

23 *Note:* There is usually diminished or absent reactivity to *tuberculin*, and in most  
24 active cases, a positive *Kveim reaction*.  
25  
26

### 27 **scavenger receptor**

28 Cell surface *receptor*, for example on *phagocytes*, which recognizes cells or molecules  
29 that require clearance from the body.

30 [3]  
31  
32

### 33 **scleroderma**

34 Chronic progressive *autoimmune disease* characterized by systemic fibrosis and  
35 vascular changes.

36 *Note:* There are two types: *progressive systemic sclerosis*, and a more limited and  
37 less rapidly progressive form known as CREST syndrome, referring to  
38 **C**alcinosis, **R**aynaud phenomenon, **E**sophageal dysfunction, **S**clerodactyly,  
39 and **T**elangiectasias.  
40  
41

### 42 **secondary challenge**

43 Second exposure of *primed lymphocytes* to a given *antigen*.

44 See also *secondary immune response*.  
45  
46

### 47 **secondary immune response**

48 Qualitatively and quantitatively improved *immune response* that occurs upon the second  
49 encounter of *primed lymphocytes* with a given *antigen*.

50 [3]  
51  
52

### 53 **secondary lymphoid tissue (organ)**

54 Tissue (organ) in which *antigen*-driven proliferation and differentiation of *mature B* and *T*  
55 *lymphocytes* take place following antigen recognition. Examples include *lymph nodes*,  
56 *Peyer's patches*, and the *spleen*.  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 See also *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)*.

4 [7]

5  
6  
7 **second messenger**

8 Substance inside a cell responsible for communicating a chemical signal from another  
9 substance that cannot itself enter the cell, but acts through binding to cell surface  
10 *receptors*.

11 *Note:* Common second messengers are cyclic AMP, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, and inositol-1,4,5-  
12 triphosphate.

13  
14  
15 **second set rejection**

16 Accelerated *rejection* of an *allograft* in a *primed* recipient.

17 [7]

18  
19  
20 **secretory component**

21 Proteolytic cleavage product of the *poly-Ig receptor* which remains associated with  
22 dimeric *immunoglobulin A (IgA)* in sero-mucus secretions.

23 [3]

24  
25  
26 **secretory immunoglobulin A (IgA)**

27 Dimeric *immunoglobulin A (IgA)* found in sero-mucus secretions.

28 [3]

29  
30  
31 **selectin**

32 Any member of a family of cell-surface *adhesion molecules* found on *leukocytes* and  
33 endothelial cells and that bind to sugars on glycoproteins.

34  
35 **selection theory** (in immunology)

36 See *clonal selection*.

37  
38  
39 **selective IgA deficiency (SIgAD)**

40 Most common form of primary *immunodeficiency*.

41 *Note:* *Autoimmunity* is the most prevalent manifestation of this deficiency.  
42 Individuals with SIgAD have an increased risk of developing *systemic* [e.g.,  
43 *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*] and organ-  
44 specific (e.g., *celiac disease*) *autoimmune* disorders.

45 After [1]

46  
47  
48 **self-antigen**

49 See *autoantigen*.

50  
51  
52 **self-tolerance**

53 Specific immunological unresponsiveness to a defined *autoantigen*.

54 *Note 1:* Primary (*clonal deletion*, *anergy*, *clonal indifference*) and secondary or  
55 regulatory (interclonal competition, suppression, *immune deviation*, *vetoing*,  
56 feedback regulation by the *idiotypic network*) mechanisms are involved in  
57

1  
2  
3 the induction and maintenance of self-tolerance.

4 *Note 2:* Breaking self-tolerance may lead to pathological *autoimmunity* and  
5 development of *autoimmune disease*.  
6

7 After [1]  
8

9 **sensitization**

10 Alteration of a body's responsiveness to a foreign *antigen*, usually an *allergen*, such that  
11 upon subsequent exposures to the allergen there is a heightened *immune response*.  
12

13 **sensitizer**

14 Substance that brings about *sensitization*.  
15  
16

17 **sepsis**

18 Spread of bacteria or bacterial products throughout the blood, eliciting a life-threatening,  
19 *systemic* inflammatory reaction (see *inflammation*).  
20  
21

22 **seroconversion**

23 The appearance in the blood *serum* of detectable *antibodies* against a specific  
24 infectious agent.  
25  
26

27 **serology**

28 Study of *serum*, especially blood serum, frequently used to detect *antibodies* to  
29 microorganisms.  
30  
31

32 **serum**

- 33 1. Clear watery fluid, especially that which moistens the surface of serous membranes  
34 or that exudes through *inflammation* of any of these membranes.  
35 2. Watery proteinaceous portion of the blood that remains after clotting.  
36

37 [5]  
38

39 **serum sickness**

40 Hypersensitive reaction to the administration of a foreign *serum*, characterized by fever,  
41 swelling, skin rash, and enlargement of the *lymph nodes*.  
42  
43

44 **severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)**

45 *Immunodeficiency* affecting both *T* and *B lymphocytes*.  
46

47 [3]  
48

49 **sheep red blood cell (SRBC) antigen**

50 *T cell*-dependent target *antigen* often used in hemolytic plaque assays of *immune*  
51 *responsiveness*.  
52

53 **signaling lectin (SIGLEC)**

54 Any member of a large family of *lectins* that bind sialylated glycans.

55 *Note:* Most are associated with cells of the *immune system*.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

**signal peptide**

signal sequence

Any sequence of amino acid residues that, when linked to a newly synthesized protein, identifies it to transport mechanisms that guide the protein to a specific location among the organelles of a eukaryotic cell, or from the cytoplasm to the periplasmic space of prokaryotic cells.

**signal sequence**

See *signal peptide*.

**signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)**

Any member of a family of cytoplasmic proteins that act as *second messengers* to activate gene transcription in response to *cytokines* and *growth factors*.

See also *JAK/STAT signaling pathway*.

**signal transduction**

Process whereby a signal arising outside the cell is converted through a series of intermediate chemical reactions inside the cell to produce a functional change in the cell.

See also *cytokine*, *growth factor*, *receptor*, *second messenger*.

**single-chain antibody (SCA)**

Small *antibody* construct in which the variable fragment (*Fv*) [see *variable (V) region*] of a *heavy chain* is linked via a synthetic peptide to the variable fragment of a *light chain*.

**single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP)**

Single base variation at a chromosomal locus, which exists stably within populations (typically defined as each variant form being present in at least 1–2 % of individuals).

[5]

**single-positive cell**

See *pre-T cell*.

**Sjögren syndrome**

Chronic *inflammation* of the lachrymal and salivary glands, often accompanied by *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)* and the presence of *autoantibodies* in the blood, occurring chiefly among women.

*Note:* Two types of Sjögren syndrome are distinguished: a primary (isolated) type and a secondary type associated with another underlying autoimmune disease [e.g., *RA*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *systemic sclerosis (SSc)*, *primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)*, *autoimmune hepatitis (AIH)*, *multiple sclerosis*, *autoimmune thyroiditis*, etc.]. *Ro/SS-A* and *La/SS-B* autoantibodies are used as classification criteria.

Modified from [1]

**skin immune system (SIS)**

Skin-associated cells that participate in an *immune response*, including *Langerhans*



1  
2  
3 *cells, dendritic cells, and keratinocytes* (mainly responsible for production of *cytokines*).  
4 [8]  
5  
6

### 7 **skin sensitization test**

8 Any test used to study skin *hypersensitivity* such as the *guinea pig maximization test* or  
9 the *Buehler test*.  
10

### 11 **skin test**

12 Procedure for evaluating *immunity* status, involving the introduction of a reagent into or  
13 under the skin.  
14  
15

### 16 **slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis (SRS-A)**

17 Group of *leukotrienes* released by *mast cells* during *anaphylaxis*, which induces a  
18 prolonged contraction of smooth muscle.  
19

20 After [7]  
21

### 22 **small G protein**

23 Any member of a family of monomeric *G proteins*, with molecular mass typically 20-40  
24 kDa, that also bind guanine nucleotides and are involved in *signal transduction*.  
25  
26

### 27 **small outer capsid (SOC) protein**

28 Protein from the shell of the bacteriophage T4, commonly used in construction of *phage*  
29 *antibody libraries*.  
30  
31

### 32 **somatic diversification theory**

33 Theory that very few *immunoglobulins (Ig)* are inherited, but that extensive *antibody*  
34 diversity arises from mutations in non-reproductive cells.  
35

36 See also *somatic hypermutation, somatic recombination, V(D)J recombination*.  
37

### 38 **somatic gene conversion**

39 Nonreciprocal exchange of nucleic acid sequences between genes in which part of the  
40 donor gene or genes is "copied" into an acceptor gene, but only the acceptor gene is  
41 altered.  
42

43 *Note:* This exchange is a mechanism for generating a diverse *immunoglobulin (Ig)*  
44 repertoire in many non-human species.  
45

46 After [7]  
47

### 48 **somatic hypermutation (SHM)**

49 Programmed process of mutation affecting the *variable (V) regions* of *immunoglobulin*  
50 (*Ig*) genes. SHM affects only individual immune cells, and the mutations are not  
51 transmitted to offspring.  
52

53 *Note 1:* This process is part of the way the *immune system* adapts to new foreign  
54 substances.  
55

56 *Note 2:* Mistargeted SMH is a likely mechanism in the development of B-cell  
57 *lymphoma*.  
58  
59  
60

**somatic recombination**

Process giving rise to increased *antibody* diversity by cutting and splicing *immunoglobulin (Ig)* genes during *lymphocyte* differentiation.

See also *combinatorial diversity*, *V(D)J recombination*.

**spleen**

Largest of the *secondary lymphoid organs*, composed of *white pulp*, rich in lymphoid cells, and *red pulp*, which contains many *erythrocytes* and *macrophages*.

*Note:* The spleen traps damaged erythrocytes carried in the blood.

After [7]

**splenic**

Of, pertaining to, connected with, or situated in the *spleen*.

**splenic pulp**

See *red pulp*.

**splenocyte**

Any *splenic* cell.

**split adjuvant technique**

Test for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which Guinea pig skin is exposed to repeated applications of a test substance and intradermal injections of complete *Freund's adjuvant* are administered separately.

**spondylitis**

Inflammation of the vertebral column.

**spontaneous autoimmune thyroiditis (SAT)**

Autoimmune thyroiditis (see *thyroiditis*, *autoimmune*) that develops spontaneously (without any apparent cause or manipulation) in certain strains of mice and rats (e.g., *NOD mice*, BB and BUF rats) as well as in other animals (e.g., OS chickens, marmoset monkeys, beagles).

[1]

**stem cell**

Multipotent cell with mitotic potential that may serve as a precursor for many kinds of differentiated cells.

[5]

**Stevens-Johnson syndrome**

bullous erythema multiforme

*Allergic* reaction, often to a medication (see *adverse drug reaction*) or infection, characterized by blistering of the skin and ulceration of *mucosal* membranes.

**stroma**

Supporting tissue of an organ.

### stromal cell

Cell found in the loose connective tissue (*stroma*) of an organ. Stromal cells include immune and inflammatory cells, pericytes, and *fibroblasts*.

### subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus (SCLE)

Chronic remitting form of *dermatitis* characterized by severe photosensitivity and Ro/SS-A and La/SS-B *autoantibodies*.

[1]

### superantigen

*Antigen* which reacts with all the *T cells* belonging to a particular *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) region* family, and which therefore stimulates (or deletes) a much larger number of cells than does conventional antigen.

[3]

### superfamily

Large group of proteins related by structural homology and function. The term also refers to the genes that encode them.

### suppression

Dominant immunological *tolerance*, a phenomenon that plays an active role in regulating *T cell* and *B cell* responses to both foreign *antigens* and *autoantigens*.

*Note:* The downregulation of responses to autoantigens is a major regulatory mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

### suppressor cell

suppressor T cell

suppressor T lymphocyte

*T cell* that suppresses the *immune response* of *B cells* and other T cells to an *antigen*. In more current usage classified as a *regulatory T cell*.

### supramolecular adhesion complex (SMAC)

Collection of molecules forming at the contact point of a *T cell* and an *antigen-presenting cell (APC)*, enriched in *T-cell receptor (TCR)*, *adhesion molecules*, and signaling molecules.

### surrogate light chain

*Light chain*-like structure formed when the proteins encoded by the  $V_{preB}$  and  $\lambda_5$  genes associate with each other. It can form *immunoglobulin (Ig)*-like complexes which are expressed on the surface of *pre-B cells* at different stages of development.

After [29]

### switch region

1  
2  
3 See *switch sequence*.

4  
5  
6 **switch sequence**

7 Highly conserved repetitive sequence that mediates *class switching* in the

8 *immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy chain* gene locus.

9 [3]

10  
11  
12 **sympathetic ophthalmia**

13 *Autoimmune* injury to one eye that occurs after penetrating injury or surgery to the other

14 eye.

15  
16  
17 **syngeneic**

18 Genetically identical, e.g., a fully inbred strain of mice.

19 [3]

20 *Note:* A practical consequence is that cells can be transferred to other syngeneic

21 animals without *rejection*.

22  
23  
24 **syngraft**

25 See *isograft*.

26  
27  
28 **systemic**

29 1. Relating to the body as a whole.

30 2. Occurring at a site in the body remote from the point of contact with a substance.

31 [5]

32  
33  
34 **systemic autoimmune disease**

35 *Autoimmune disease* affecting a number of organs or tissues, or the whole body.

36  
37  
38 **systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)**

39 Chronic *autoimmune disease* that is potentially debilitating and sometimes fatal as the

40 *immune system* attacks the body's cells and tissues, with *inflammation* and tissue

41 damage.

42 *Note 1:* SLE can affect any part of the body, but most often harms the heart, joints,

43 skin, lungs, blood vessels, liver, kidneys and nervous system. The course of

44 the disease is unpredictable, with periods of illness (called flares) alternating

45 with remission. SLE can occur at any age, and is most common in women,

46 particularly of non-European descent.

47 *Note 2:* The disease is very heterogeneous in clinical expression and serological

48 factors. *Autoantibodies* directed against nuclear components [*antinuclear*

49 *antibodies (ANA)*] are typically detected. Anti-dsDNA, anti-Sm, and

50 antiphospholipid *antibodies* are used as classification criteria.

51 Modified from [1]

52  
53  
54 **systemic sclerosis (SSc)**

55 Fibrosing disease of unclear etiology that affects multiple organ systems.

56 *Note 1:* The skin ("*scleroderma*") and blood vessels (arteries, small vessels) are

1  
2  
3 most commonly affected, but involvement of the lungs and gastrointestinal  
4 tract (esophagus) may also be observed.

5  
6 *Note 2:* Anticentromere *antibodies* (ACA) as well as *autoantibodies* against DNA  
7 topoisomerase I (scl-70) and various nucleolar *antigens* are diagnostic and  
8 prognostic markers and are often detectable years before disease  
9 manifestation. They are also detectable in quartz dust-exposed individuals.

10 After [1]

### 11 **T cell**

12 See *T lymphocyte*.

### 13 **T cell, drug-specific**

14 *T-memory cell* that is specific for a drug *allergen*.

### 15 **T cell-dependent antibody response (TDAR)**

16 *Immunotoxicity* test that evaluates the ability of animals to produce *antibodies* to a *T-*  
17 *dependent antigen* [e.g., *sheep red blood cells (SRBC)* or *keyhole limpet hemocyanin*  
18 (*KLH*)].

### 19 **T-cell receptor (TCR)**

20 *Antigen-specific receptor* on *T cells* composed of one set of heterodimeric chains. Two  
21 types of TCR heterodimers are known ( $\alpha/\beta$  and  $\gamma/\delta$ ).

22 *Note:* Functional binding for TCR requires a complex of *major histocompatibility*  
23 *complex (MHC) molecule*, *antigenic peptide*, and TCR.

24 After [1]

### 25 **T-dependent antigen**

26 *Antigen* which requires *helper T lymphocytes (Th)* in order to elicit an *antibody*  
27 response.

28 [3]

### 29 **TdT-dependent dUTP-biotin nick end labeling (TUNEL) assay**

30 Method for detecting *apoptotic* cells in situ based on characteristic DNA fragmentation.  
31 It is based on the ability of *terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)* to transfer a  
32 labeled deoxyuridine triphosphate to the terminal ends arising from DNA cleavage.

### 33 **T helper cell**

34 See *helper T lymphocyte (Th)*.

### 35 **Th0 cell**

36 *Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* with a less restricted *cytokine* profile than *Th1* and *Th2 cells*.

37 *Note:* Th0-like responses are observed in patients with *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*,  
38 *Sjögren syndrome*, and *Graves disease*.

39 After [1]

### 40 **Th1 cell**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

*Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* producing mainly *interleukin-2* (IL-2), *interferon (IFN- $\gamma$ )*, and *tumor necrosis factor  $\beta$*  (TNF- $\beta$ ), and thereby responsible for *phagocyte-dependent host* responses.

*Note:* Th1-dominated responses are seen in *autoimmune diseases* in which *cytotoxic T cells* and *macrophages* play a major role, e.g., *multiple sclerosis*, *diabetes mellitus type 1*, *Hashimoto thyroiditis*, and *Crohn disease*. Switching from Th1 to Th2 response can prevent Th1-mediated tissue destruction in animal models.

After [1]

### Th2 cell

*Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* in mice producing *interleukins* IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, and IL-13.

*Note:* Besides other effects, they provide optimal help for *antibody* responses. Th2 responses should also be regarded as an important downregulatory mechanism for exaggerated Th1 responses. Predominant Th2 *cytokine* profile is observed in patients with *atopic* disorders and *graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)*.

After [1]

### Th3 cell

*Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* producing and responding to *transforming growth factor  $\beta$*  (TGF- $\beta$ ) and helping *immunoglobulin A (IgA)* antibody responses.

### Th9 cell

*Helper T lymphocyte (Th)* producing *interleukin* IL-9, which stimulates *mast cells*.

### Th17 cell (T17)

*Helper T lymphocyte (Th)*, distinct from Th1 and Th2 cells, that secretes the *interleukin* IL-17.

*Note:* T17 lymphocytes are thought to play an important role in *autoimmune disease*.

### T-independent antigen

*Antigen* that is able to elicit an *antibody* response in the absence of *T cells*.

[3]

### T lymphocyte

*Lymphocyte* that matures in the *thymus* and has the ability to recognize specific peptide *antigens* through the *receptors* on its cell surface.

*Note:* *T-cell receptor (TCR)* molecules are specific for complexes comprising short peptides bound to and presented by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* molecules.

### Tr1 cell

*T lymphocyte* that regulates Th1 cell responses. It resembles the *regulatory T cell (Treg)* and is possibly related to the Th3 cell.

1  
2  
3 *Note:* It is abundant in the intestine and may be involved in *tolerance* to dietary  
4 *antigens*.  
5  
6

7 **tandem conjugate**

8 Molecular construct with two fluorochromes where the first excites the second by its  
9 emission.  
10

11 *Note:* Used in *flow cytometry* analysis.  
12

13 **target cell** (in immunology)

14 Cell killed by one of the body's *killer cells*, such as a *cytotoxic T lymphocyte* or *natural*  
15 *killer (NK) cell*.  
16

17 **terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)**

18 Enzyme that inserts non-coded nucleotides at the junctions of *V*, *D*, and *J gene*  
19 segments of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* locus DNA, thus increasing  
20 the diversity of *antigen-specific* recognition.  
21  
22

23 **tetanus toxoid**

24 Detoxified tetanus *toxin* used to produce active immunity (see *active immune response*)  
25 against tetanus.  
26  
27

28 **tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (TPA)**

29 See *phorbol myristate acetate (PMA)*.  
30  
31

32 **tetramer staining**

33 Technique used for selective staining of *antigen-specific T-lymphocytes* in vitro or in  
34 situ. The antigen is presented to T-cells by *peptide tetramer* constructs of *major*  
35 *histocompatibility (MHC) class I molecules*. It is also used to isolate antigen-specific T-  
36 cell populations for *clonal expansion*.  
37  
38

39 **tertiary lymphoid tissue (organ)**

40 Ectopic lymphoid aggregates that accumulate during the process of chronic immune  
41 stimulation, and exhibit characteristics usually associated with the *secondary lymphoid*  
42 *organs*.  
43

44 [30]  
45

46 **therapeutic antibody**

47 See *antibody, therapeutic*.  
48  
49

50 **thrombocyte**

51 Same as *platelet*.  
52

53 **thrombocytopenia**

54 Abnormal decrease in the number of *platelets* to  $<150 \times 10^9/L$  of blood.

55 *Note:* Frequently detected in patients with *autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic*  
56 *lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *Sjögren syndrome*, *mixed connective tissue*  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 *disease (MCTD), antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)*. Primary forms may be  
4 drug-induced (heparin-induced thrombocytopenia) or mediated by  
5 antiplatelet *antibodies [idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)]*.  
6

7 After [1]  
8

### 9 **thromboxane**

10 Any of several substances (predominantly thromboxanes A2 and B2) synthesized by  
11 *platelets* from arachidonic acid precursor, that cause vasoconstriction of vascular and  
12 bronchial smooth muscle and facilitates platelet aggregation.  
13

### 14 **thrush**

15 Oral infection with *Candida albicans*, often in patients with *immunosuppression*.  
16  
17

### 18 **thymic**

19 Pertaining to the *thymus*.  
20  
21

### 22 **thymic atrophy**

23 Involution of the *thymus* gland leading to a diminished capacity to generate new *T cells*.  
24  
25

### 26 **thymic education**

27 Process by which *T cells*, developing in the *thymus*, are screened for potentially harmful  
28 self-reactive T cells (which are removed), while potentially beneficial T cells are  
29 promoted.  
30  
31

### 32 **thymocyte**

33 See *pre-T cell*.  
34  
35

### 36 **thymoma**

37 Rare, usually benign, tumor arising from tissue of the *thymus* gland.  
38

*Note: Thymoma is often associated with myasthenia gravis.*  
39

### 40 **thymus**

41 Pyramid-shaped organ in the thoracic or cervical region of mammals, composed of  
42 *lymphatic tissue* in which minute concentric bodies (*thymic corpuscles*, the remnants of  
43 epithelial structures) are found.  
44

*Note 1: Stem cells* in the outer cortex of thymus develop into different kinds of *T cells*. Some migrate to the inner *medulla* and enter the bloodstream; those that do not may be destroyed to prevent *autoimmune* reactions.  
45  
46  
47

*Note 2: This organ is necessary for the development of thymus-derived lymphocytes (T cells) and is the source of several hormones involved in T cell maturation, for example, thymosin, thymopoietin, thymulin, and thymocyte humoral factor.*  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52

*Note 3: If a newborn's thymus is removed, not enough T cells are produced, the spleen and lymph nodes have little tissue, and the immune system fails, causing a gradual, fatal wasting disease. Thymus removal in adults has little effect.*  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



**thymus-dependent (TD) antigen**

Antigen that requires the participation of *T lymphocytes* to elicit an *immune response* in *B lymphocytes*.

**thymus-independent antigen**

Antigen that does not require the participation of *T lymphocytes* to elicit an *immune response* in *B cells*.

**thyroglobulin (TG)**

Glycoprotein secreted by thyroid follicular cells that is a major *autoantigen* in *autoimmune diseases* of the thyroid.

*Note:* Thyroglobulin *autoantibodies* are found in patients with *autoimmune thyroiditis*, and *Graves disease*.

After [1]

**thyroiditis, autoimmune**

Inflammatory destruction of the thyroid gland (ranging from a mild focal thyroiditis to extensive *lymphocytic* infiltration and scarring) often associated with goitre and hypothyroidism.

*Note:* The most common types of autoimmune thyroiditis are *Hashimoto thyroiditis* and atrophic thyroiditis.

After [1]

**thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR)**

Main *autoantigenic* target in patients with *Graves disease*.

*Note:* Most TSHR *autoantibodies* are stimulatory, acting as agonists of thyroid-stimulating hormone, but *receptor-blocking antibodies* are also found.

After [1]

**thyroid peroxidase (TPO)**

Thyroid enzyme that is a major *autoantigen* in *autoimmune diseases* of the thyroid.

[1]

**tissue transglutaminase (tTG)**

Main target of *autoantibodies* in *celiac disease*.

[1]

**titer (in immunology)**

Reciprocal of the highest dilution of a titration of an *antigen* with an *antibody* that gives a measurable effect (e.g., *agglutination*), and thus an empirical measure of the *avidity* of an antibody. For example, if the effect is seen until a dilution of 1:1000, the antibody titer is 1000.

**tolerance**

See *immunological tolerance*.

**tolerogen**

*Antigen* used to induce *tolerance*.

*Note:* Induction depends strongly on the circumstances of administration (e.g., route and concentration) in addition to any inherent property of the molecule.

After [3]

**Toll-like receptor (TLR)**

Member of a family of *pattern recognition receptors* involved in the detection of structures associated with pathogens or damaged *host* tissues.

**tonsil**

Small, rounded mass of tissue, especially of *lymphoid tissue*; generally used alone to designate one of the paired palatine tonsils.

**toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)**

Lyell syndrome

A severe form of *Stevens-Johnson syndrome* with extensive detachment of the skin, often as a result of an *allergic adverse drug reaction*.

**toxic shock syndrome**

*Systemic* reaction produced by the *toxin* derived from the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus*; the toxin acts as a *superantigen*, which activates a high proportion of *CD4+* *T lymphocytes* to produce *cytokines*.

[7]

**toxin**

Poisonous substance produced by a biological organism such as a microbe, animal, plant, or fungus.

*Note:* Examples are botulinum toxin, tetrodotoxin, pyrrolizidine alkaloids, and amanitin.

[5]

Compare *immunotoxin*.

**toxoid**

Chemically or physically modified *toxin* that is no longer harmful but retains *immunogenicity*.

[3]

**transcytosis**

Vesicular transport of macromolecules from one side of a cell to the other, through the cell's interior.

**transforming growth factor  $\beta$  (TGF- $\beta$ )**

Secreted member of the protein *superfamily* of the same name that functions in

1  
2  
3 controlling the cell cycle and *apoptosis*.

4 *Note:* TGF- $\beta$  is involved in several aspects of regulation of the *immune system* and  
5 blocks activation of *lymphocytes* and *macrophages*.  
6  
7

### 8 **transfusion, blood**

9 Transference of blood or blood-based products from one individual into the circulation of  
10 another.  
11

### 12 **transplantation**

13 Grafting solid tissue (e.g., cornea) or organ (e.g., kidney or heart), or cells (particularly  
14 *bone marrow*), from one individual to another.

15 See also *allograft*, *xenograft*.

16 After [7]  
17  
18  
19

### 20 **transplant rejection**

21 See *rejection*.  
22  
23

### 24 **transporters associated with antigen processing** (TAP-1 and TAP-2)

25 Molecules that carry *antigenic* peptides from the cytoplasm into the lumen of the  
26 endoplasmic reticulum for incorporation into *major histocompatibility (MHC) class I*  
27 *molecules*.  
28

29 [3]  
30

### 31 **tryptophan**

32 (2S)-2-amino-3-(1H-indol-3-yl)propanoic acid

33 Essential amino acid for humans, and required for *T cell* proliferation.

34 See also *indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO)*.  
35  
36

### 37 **tuberculin**

38 *Antigen* found in extracts of *Mycobacteria*, used in a *skin test* for tuberculosis (*Mantoux*  
39 *test*).  
40

### 41 **tuberculin test**

42 Diagnostic test in which *antigens* derived from the organism causing tuberculosis  
43 (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) are injected subcutaneously; individuals who have been  
44 exposed to the organism develop a *delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH)* response at the  
45 injection site 24-48 hours later.

46 *Note:* those who have been previously vaccinated with *bacille Calmette–Guérin*  
47 (*BCG*) also show a positive response.  
48

49 [7]  
50  
51

### 52 **tumor antigen**

53 *Antigen* whose expression is associated with tumor cells.

54 [3]  
55  
56

### 57 **tumor immunology**

58  
59  
60

Application of *immunology* to understanding tumor biology, *immune system* avoidance by tumors, and *immunotherapy* directed against tumors.

**tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL)**

Mononuclear *lymphocyte* derived from the inflammatory infiltrate of a solid tumor.  
After [7]

**tumor necrosis factor (TNF)**

cachectin

cachexin

TNF- $\alpha$

Protein produced and secreted by several of the body's cell types, including *leukocytes*.

*Note 1:* It promotes the destruction of some types of cancer cells and is a *cytokine* involved in *systemic inflammation*.

*Note 2:* Activation of the TNF- $\alpha$  *receptor* may trigger *apoptosis* through the *extrinsic pathway*.

After [5]

**tumor necrosis factor  $\beta$  (TNF- $\beta$ )**

See *lymphotoxin*.

**tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor-associated factor (TRAF)**

Family of proteins involved in regulating *inflammation* and *apoptosis* through interaction with the *tumor necrosis factor receptor*.

**tumor rejection antigen (TRA)**

*Antigen* present specifically on a tumor cell that may target it for destruction by the *immune system* or for *antibody therapy*.

**tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA)**

Any of several *antigens* uniquely expressed by certain tumor cells, detected by production of *antibodies* or *T lymphocytes* following tumor transplantation (e.g., in mice).

**type 1 diabetes mellitus**

See *diabetes mellitus type 1*

**type I hypersensitivity**

See *Gell and Coombs classification, immediate-type hypersensitivity*.

**type II hypersensitivity**

See *Gell and Coombs classification*.

**type III hypersensitivity**

See *Gell and Coombs classification*.

**type IV hypersensitivity**

1  
2  
3 See *Gell and Coombs classification*.

### 4 5 6 **tyrosine kinase**

7 protein tyrosine kinase

8 Any member of a family of enzymes that phosphorylates target proteins on tyrosine  
9 residues, thus playing a crucial role in *signal transduction*.

10 *Note:* Tyrosine kinases play a key role in *lymphocyte activation*. Major tyrosine  
11 kinases involved in *T lymphocyte* activation are Lck, Fyn, and ZAP-70;  
12 those involved in *B lymphocyte* activation are Blk, Fyn, Lyn, and Syk.

13  
14 After [7]

### 15 16 17 **ubiquitin**

18 Highly conserved 76 amino acid peptide abundant in eukaryotic cells. Its covalent  
19 attachment to a protein by a ubiquitin ligase complex targets that protein for destruction  
20 by the *proteasome*.

### 21 22 **unresponsiveness** (in immunology)

23 Inability to respond to an *antigenic* stimulus.

24 *Note:* Unresponsiveness may be specific for a particular antigen (see *tolerance*), or  
25 broadly nonspecific as a result of damage to the entire *immune system*, for  
26 example, after whole-body irradiation.

27  
28 After [7]

### 29 30 31 **urticaria**

32 See *hives*.

### 33 34 **V $\alpha$ -J $\alpha$ rearrangement**

35 Preferential partnering of J $\alpha$  gene segments with V $\alpha$  gene segments during  
36 rearrangement in the *T-cell receptor (TCR)* gene, possibly following deletion of the V $\delta$   
37 gene region.

### 38 39 40 **V(D)J recombination**

41 Mechanism for generating *antigen-specific receptors* of *T cells* and *B cells*; it involves  
42 the joining of *V*, *D*, and *J* gene segments, mediated by the enzyme complex V(D)J  
43 recombinase, and products of the *recombination-activating genes*.

44  
45 [7]

46 *Note 1:* The conventional syntax V(D)J indicates that V and J genes code the *light*  
47 *chain* and all three genes code the *heavy chain*, the processes being VJ  
48 and VDJ recombination, respectively.

49 *Note 2:* Recombination occurs only once in a cell's lifetime.

50 See also *somatic recombination*.

### 51 52 53 **V domain**

54 See *variable (V) region*.

### 55 56 57 **V gene**

1  
2  
3 See *variable (V) gene*.

4  
5  
6 **V region**

7 See *variable (V) region*.

8  
9 **vaccination**

10 Immunization with a *vaccine* against a pathogen.

11  
12  
13 **vaccine**

14 Preparation of an *antigen* intended to stimulate the *immune system* to render future  
15 *tolerance*, often of a weakened or killed pathogen, such as a bacterium or virus, or of a  
16 portion of the pathogen's structure. Upon administration the vaccine stimulates  
17 *antibody* production or *cellular immunity* against the pathogen but is incapable of  
18 causing severe infection.

19 See also *attenuated vaccine*, *inactivated vaccine*.

20  
21  
22 **variable (V) domain**

23 See *variable (V) region*.

24  
25  
26 **variable (V) gene**

27 Gene, segment(s) of which rearrange together with *diversity (D) gene* and *joining (J)*  
28 *gene* segments in order to encode the *variable (V) region* amino acid sequences of  
29 *immunoglobulins (Ig)* and *T-cell receptors (TCR)*.

30 [3]

31 See also *variable (V) region*.

32  
33  
34 **variable (V) region**

35 N-terminal portion of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* that contains the  
36 *antigen-binding* region of the molecule. V regions are formed by the recombination of  
37 V(D) and J gene segments.

38 *Note:* The V region consists of two V domains, V<sub>L</sub> and V<sub>H</sub>.

39 [7]

40 See also *somatic recombination*, *V(D)J-recombination*.

41  
42  
43 **vascular addressin**

44 Cell *adhesion molecule* present on the luminal surface of blood and *lymph* vessel  
45 endothelium, recognized by *homing* molecules that direct *leukocytes* to tissues with the  
46 appropriate 'address'.

47 [3]

48  
49  
50 **vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)**

51 CD106

52 Molecule, expressed on the surface of endothelial cells that functions in the adhesion of  
53 *lymphocytes*, *monocytes*, *eosinophils*, and *basophils* to vascular endothelium to the  
54 vascular surface.

55 See also *adhesion molecule*.

**vasculitis**

Group of disorders that share a common underlying problem of *inflammation* of a blood vessel or vessels.

*Note:* Vasculitis can lead to *necrosis*, fibrosis, or thrombosis. *Autoimmunity* plays an important role in some vasculitides (e.g., *ANCA-associated vasculitides*, *Goodpasture syndrome*, *cryoglobulinemic vasculitis*).

After [1]

**vasoactive amine**

Substance containing amino group(s) that increases vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction. Examples are *histamine* and 5-hydroxytryptamine.

**very early activating antigen**

CD69

Specific *antigen* expressed on *lymphocytes* very soon after *activation* by *phorbol myristate acetate (PMA)*.

**very late activation antigen (VLA)**

*T cell* surface *antigen*, named for its delayed appearance after *T cell* activation; a member of the *integrin superfamily* involved in cell adhesion.

**vetoing**

Elimination by *apoptosis* of a self-peptide-major *histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* recognizing *lymphocyte* by a self-peptide-presenting (veto) cell.

After [1]

**warm autoantibody type**

*Autoantibodies* that react optimally at higher temperatures (37 °C) with surface *antigens* of *erythrocytes*. They mediate *autoimmune hemolytic anemia*.

[1]

**Wegener granulomatosis (WG)**

*Granulomatous inflammation* involving the respiratory tract, and necrotizing *vasculitis* affecting small to medium-sized vessels (e.g., capillaries, venules, arterioles, and arteries).

*Note:* Necrotizing *glomerulonephritis* is common in WG.

[1]

**western blotting**

See *immunoblotting*.

**wheal**

Circumscribed papule or plaque of *edema* of the skin, occurring as an *urticarial* lesion.

See also *hives*.

1  
2  
3 After [9]  
4

5  
6 **wheal and flare**

7 Dermatological reaction at a skin site where an *antigen* is injected into an *allergic*  
8 individual. The reaction is characterized by a "flare" of *erythema* and a *wheal* produced  
9 by *serum* exuding into tissue, causing local *edema*.  
10

11  
12 **white pulp**

13 Collections of *lymphocytes* in the *spleen*, responsible for its *immune* function.  
14 See also *red pulp*.  
15

16  
17 **Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome**

18 eczema-thrombocytopenia-immunodeficiency syndrome

19 Condition characterized by chronic *eczema*, chronic suppurative otitis media, *anemia*,  
20 and *thrombocytopenic purpura* (accompanied by bloody diarrhea); it is an  
21 *immunodeficiency* syndrome transmitted as an X-linked recessive trait, in which there is  
22 poor *antibody* response to polysaccharide *antigens* and dysfunction of *cell-mediated*  
23 *immunity*.  
24

25 After [18]  
26

27  
28 **X-linked agammaglobulinemia**

29 Bruton Syndrome

30 Sex-linked impairment of the ability to produce *mature B cells*, thus characterized by  
31 recurrent infections.  
32

33  
34 **X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency**

35 Sex-linked trait carried on the X-chromosome of *severe combined immunodeficiency*  
36 syndrome resulting from nonfunctional *B lymphocytes* and lack of *T lymphocytes* and  
37 *natural killer (NK) lymphocytes*, leading to recurrent, persistent, and severe infections.  
38

39  
40 **xenobiotic**

41 Substance with a chemical structure foreign to a given organism.

42 *Note:* Frequently restricted to man-made substances.

43 [5]  
44

45  
46 **xenogeneic**

47 Exhibiting genetic differences between species.

48 After [3]  
49

50  
51 **xenograft**

52 Tissue or organ *graft* between individuals of different species.

53 [3]  
54

55  
56 **xenophagy**

57 *Autophagy* selective for degradation of intracellular bacteria and viruses.  
58

59  
60 **Zeta chain (TCR)-associated protein kinase-70 kDa (ZAP-70A)**



1  
2  
3 *T lymphocyte-specific tyrosine kinase* involved in T lymphocyte activation.  
4  
5

6 **zymosan**

7 Crude preparation of yeast cell walls, consisting chiefly of polysaccharide, activating the  
8 *alternative pathway* of the *complement system* in the presence of *properdin* and used in  
9 the immunoassay of this compound.  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

For Peer Review Only

**REFERENCES FOR ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES**

1. IPCS, Principles and Methods for Assessing Autoimmunity. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 236. 2006, Geneva: World Health Organization.
2. Murphy, K., Travers, P., Walport, M., and Janeway Jr, C.A., Janeway's Immunobiology, 7th Ed. 2008, New York: Garland Science.
3. Delves, P.J., Martin, S., Burton, D., and Roitt, I., Roitt's Essential Immunology, 11th Revised Ed. 2006, Oxford: John Wiley and Sons & Blackwell Publishing.
4. IPCS, Principles and Methods/Assessing Allergic Hypersensitization Associated with Exposure to Chemicals. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 212. 1999, Geneva: World Health Organization.
5. Duffus, J.H., Nordberg, M., and Templeton, D.M., Glossary of terms used in toxicology, 2nd Ed. Pure Appl. Chem., 79: 1153-1341 (2007).
6. Edwards, I.R. and Aronson, A.K., Adverse drug reactions: definitions, diagnosis, and management. Lancet, 356: 1255-1259 (2000).
7. Benjamini, E., Coico, R., and Sunshine, G., Immunology, A Short Course, 4th Ed. 2000, Oxford: Wiley Interscience.
8. Thomas, P.T. and House, R.V., Chapter 7. Preclinical Immunotoxicity Assessment, in CRC Handbook of Toxicology, M.J. Derelanko and M.A. Hollinger, Editors. 1995, CRC Press: Boca Raton. p. 293-316.
9. Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th Revised Ed. 2006, Baltimore: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins.
10. Cummings, R.D. and McEver, R.P., C-type lectins, in Essentials in Glycobiology, 2nd ed., A. Varki, et al., Editors. 2009, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.
11. The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, 4th Ed. 2000, Boston: Houghton Mifflin.
12. Lubberts, E., Joosten, L.A.B., Chabaud, M., van den Bersselaar, L., Oppers, B., Coenen-de Roo, C.J.J., Richards, C.D., Miossec, P., and van den Berg, W.B., J. Clin. Invest., 105: 1697-1710 (2000).
13. Rock, K.L. and Shen, L., Immunol. Rev., 207: 166-183 (2005).
14. Goldsby, R.A., Kindt, T.J., Kubly, J., and Osborne, B.A., Immunology, 5th Ed. 2003, New York: W.H. Freeman.

15. Parker, S.P., ed. McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms, 6th Ed. 2002, McGraw-Hill: New York.
16. Paul, W.E., Fundamental Immunology, 6th Ed. 2008, Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Wolters Kluwer.
17. Lackie, J., A Dictionary of Biomedicine, 2010, Oxford University Press.
18. National Research Council, Committee on Biological Markers, Subcommittee on Immunotoxicology, Biological Markers in Immunotoxicology. 1992, Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
19. Kumar, V., Abbas, A.K., and Fausto, N., Robbins and Cotran: Pathologic Basis of Disease, 7th Ed. 2005, Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders.
20. King, R.C., Stansfield, W.D., and Mulligan, P.K., A Dictionary of Genetics. 2007, Oxford University Press.
21. IPCS, Immunotoxicity associated with exposure to chemicals, principles and methods for assessment. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 180. 1996, Geneva: World Health Organization.
22. Yanai, H., Ba, T., Choi, M.K., Kawamura, T., Negishi, H., Nakasato, M., Lu, Y., Hangai, S., Koshiba, R., Savitsky, D., Ronfani, L., Akira, S., Bianchi, M.E., Honda, K., Tamura, T., Kodama, T., and Taniguchi, T., HMGB proteins function as universal sentinels for nucleic-acid-mediated innate immune responses Nature, 462: 99-103 (2009).
23. Sjolander, A., Cox, J.C., and Barr, I.G., ISCOMs: an adjuvant with multiple functions. J. Leukocyte Biol., 64: 713-723 (1998).
24. Waldmann, H., Adams, E., Fairchild, P., and Cobbold, S., Infectious tolerance and the long-term acceptance of transplanted tissue. Immunol. Rev., 212: 301-313 (2006).
25. Martinon, F., Burns, K., and Tschopp, J., The inflammasome: a molecular platform triggering activation of inflammatory caspases and processing of proIL-1 $\beta$ . Mol. Cell, 10: 417-426 (2002).
26. Cammack, R., Atwood, T., Campbell, P., H., P., Smith, A., Vella, F., and Stirling, J., eds. The Oxford Dictionary of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology. 2008, Oxford University Press.
27. Rosenstiel, P., Till, A., and Schreiber, S., NOD-like receptors and human diseases. Microbes Infect., 9: 648-657 (2007).
28. Martin, E. and Hine, R., A Dictionary of Biology. 2008, Oxford University Press.

- 1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60
29. Melchers, F., Karasuyama, H., Haasner, D., Bauer, S., Kudo, A., Sakaguchi, N., Jameson, B., and Rolink, A., The surrogate light chain in B-cell development. *Immunol. Today*, 14 (1993).
30. Shomer, N.H., Fox, J.G., Juedes, A.E., and Ruddle, N.H., *Infect. Immun.*, 71: 3572-3577 (2003).

For Peer Review Only

**ANNEX I – Abbreviations**

AAE – Acquired angioedema

ACA – Anticentromere antibody

ADA – Adenosine deaminase

ADAM family protein – A disintegrin and metalloproteinase domain family protein

ADCC – Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity

AFP –  $\alpha$ -Fetoprotein

AID – Activation-induced cytidine deaminase

AIDS – Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome

AIH – Autoimmune hepatitis

AIRE – Autoimmune regulator

ALL – Acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia

AMA – Antimitochondrial antibody

AML – Acute myelogenous leukemia

ANA – Anti-nuclear antibody

ANCA – Antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody

ANF – Antinuclear factor

APC – Antigen-presenting cell

APECED syndrome – Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy–candidiasis– ectodermal–  
dystrophy

APR – Acute-phase response

APS – Antiphospholipid syndrome

ARDS – Acute (or Adult) respiratory distress syndrome

ASA test – Active systemic anaphylaxis test

AT – Ataxia telangiectasia

ATM – Ataxia telangiectasia-mutated

AZT – Azidothymidine

1  
2  
3 BALT – Bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue  
4  
5 BCG - Bacille Calmette–Guérin  
6  
7 BCR – B-cell receptor  
8  
9 BLIMP-1 – B-lymphocyte-induced maturation protein 1  
10  
11 BLNK – B-cell linker protein  
12  
13 BSF – B-cell stimulatory factor  
14  
15 CALT – Conjunctiva-associated lymphoid tissue  
16  
17 CD – i) Cluster of differentiation, ii) Cluster determinant  
18  
19 CD40L – CD40 ligand  
20  
21 CDR – Complementarity determining region  
22  
23 CEA – Carcinoembryonic antigen  
24  
25 CGD – Chronic granulomatous disease  
26  
27 CLA – Cutaneous lymphocyte antigen  
28  
29 CLL – Chronic lymphocytic leukemia  
30  
31 CMA – Chaperone-mediated autophagy  
32  
33 CMI – Cell-mediated immunity  
34  
35 CML – Chronic myelogenous leukemia  
36  
37 CMV – Cytomegalovirus  
38  
39 ConA – Concanavalin A  
40  
41 CRA – Cytokine release assay  
42  
43 cRBC – chicken red blood cell  
44  
45 CREST – Calcinosis, Raynaud phenomenon, esophageal dysfunction, sclerodactyly,  
46 and telangiectasias  
47  
48  
49 CRP – C-reactive protein  
50  
51 CSF – Colony stimulating factors  
52  
53 CTL – Cytotoxic T lymphocyte  
54  
55 CTLA-4 – cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4  
56  
57 DAF – Decay-accelerating factor  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 DAT – Direct antiglobulin test  
4  
5 DDT – Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane  
6  
7 DTH assay – Delayed-type hypersensitivity assay  
8  
9 EAE – Experimental allergic encephalomyelitis  
10  
11 EBV – Epstein–Barr virus  
12  
13 ECF-A – Eosinophil chemotactic factor of anaphylaxis  
14  
15 EGF – Epidermal growth factor  
16  
17 ELISA – Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay  
18  
19 ELISPOT assay – Enzyme-linked immunospot assay  
20  
21 Erk – Extracellular regulated kinase  
22  
23 ESL – Embryonic stem cell  
24  
25 FACS – Fluorescence-assisted (or activated) cell sorting  
26  
27 FCAS – Familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome  
28  
29 FHL – Familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis  
30  
31 FITC – Fluorescein isothiocyanate  
32  
33 fMLP – Formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine  
34  
35 GABAergic neurons –  $\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid-responsive neurons  
36  
37 GAD – Glutamic acid decarboxylase  
38  
39 GALT – Gut-associated lymphoid tissue  
40  
41 GBS – Guillain-Barré syndrome  
42  
43 G-CSF – Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor  
44  
45 GM-CSF – Granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor  
46  
47 GPMT – Guinea pig maximization test  
48  
49 GVH – Graft-versus-host  
50  
51 GVHD – Graft-versus-host disease  
52  
53 HAART – Highly active antiretroviral therapy  
54  
55 HAE – Hereditary angioedema  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 HEV – High endothelial venule  
4  
5 HIGM – Hyper immunoglobulin M syndrome  
6  
7 HIT – Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia  
8  
9 HIV – Human immunodeficiency virus  
10  
11 HLA – Human leukocyte antigen  
12  
13 HMGB protein – High-mobility group box protein  
14  
15 HMI – Humorally-mediated immunity  
16  
17 HPS – Hypersensitivity pneumonitis  
18  
19 Ia – Immune response-associated (antigen *or* protein), *also* I region-associated  
20  
21 IAT – Indirect antiglobulin test  
22  
23 IBD – Inflammatory bowel disease  
24  
25 ICA – Islet cell antibodies  
26  
27 ICAM – Intercellular adhesion molecule  
28  
29 ICE – Interleukin-1 $\beta$  converting enzyme  
30  
31 ICOS – Inducible co-stimulatory protein  
32  
33 ICOSL – Ligand of inducible co-stimulatory protein (LICOS)  
34  
35 IDDM – Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus  
36  
37 IDO – Indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase  
38  
39 IDR – Idiosyncratic drug reaction  
40  
41 IEL – Intraepithelial lymphocyte  
42  
43 IFN- $\gamma$  – Interferon gamma  
44  
45 Ig – Immunoglobulin  
46  
47 IL – Interleukin  
48  
49 IPAF – Interleukin-1 $\beta$  converting enzyme (ICE) protease-activating factor  
50  
51 IPEX – Immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked  
52  
53 ISCOM – Immunostimulating complex  
54  
55 ITAM – Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 ITIM – Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif  
4  
5 ITP – Idiopathic (or immune) thrombocytopenic purpura  
6  
7 IVCCA – In vivo cytokine capture assay  
8  
9 JAK – Janus-family tyrosine kinase  
10  
11 JAM test – “Just another method” test  
12  
13 JNK – c-Jun protein kinase  
14  
15 KAR – Killer activatory receptor  
16  
17 K cell – Killer cell  
18  
19 KIR – Killer inhibitory receptor, Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor  
20  
21 KLH – Keyhole limpet hemocyanin  
22  
23 KLR – Killer lectin-like receptor  
24  
25 KS – Kaposi sarcoma  
26  
27 LAK – Lymphokine- (Lymphocyte-) activated killer cells  
28  
29 LALT – Larynx-associated lymphoid tissue  
30  
31 LBA – Lymphocyte blastogenesis assay  
32  
33 LCA – Leukocyte common antigen  
34  
35 LDL – Low density lipoprotein  
36  
37 LEMS – Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome  
38  
39 LFA – Leukocyte functional antigens  
40  
41 LFA-1 – Lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1  
42  
43 LGL – Large granular lymphocyte  
44  
45 LPT – Lymphocyte proliferation test  
46  
47 LICOS – Ligand of inducible co-stimulatory protein  
48  
49 LKM – Liver–kidney microsomal antibody  
50  
51 LLNA – (Murine) local lymph node assay  
52  
53 LPS – Lipopolysaccharide  
54  
55 LRR – Leucine-rich repeat  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 LT- Lymphotoxin  
4

5 LTT – Lymphocyte transformation test  
6

7 M cell – Microfold cell  
8

9 Mab – Monoclonal antibody  
10

11 MAC – Membrane attack complex  
12

13 MAdCAM-1 – Mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1  
14

15 MALT – Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue  
16

17 MAPC – Multipotent adult progenitor cell  
18

19 MAPK – Mitogen-activated protein kinase  
20

21 MASP – Mannan-binding lectin serine peptidase, Mannose-binding-protein-associated  
22 serine protease  
23

24 MBL – Mannose-binding lectin  
25

26 MBP – Mannose-binding protein  
27

28 MCAD (MCAS) – Mast cell activation disorder (syndrome)  
29

30 MCS – Multiple chemical sensitivity  
31

32 MCTD – Mixed connective tissue disease  
33

34 MEST – Mouse ear-swelling test  
35

36 MHC – Major histocompatibility complex  
37

38 MIGET – Mouse IgE test  
39

40 MLR – Mixed lymphocyte response/reaction  
41

42 MMR – Macrophage mannose receptor  
43

44 MPA – Microscopic polyangiitis  
45

46 MPO – Myeloperoxidase  
47

48 MPS – Mononuclear phagocytic system  
49

50 mTOR – Mammalian target of rapamycin  
51

52 MTX – Methotrexate  
53

54 NAA – Natural autoantibodies  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 NACHT domain – (Protein domain derived from several other acromyms not included in  
4 this glossary, namely NAIP, CIITA, HET-E, and IP1)

5  
6 NALP3 – NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3 (same as  
7 NLRP3)

8  
9 NALT – Nasal-associated lymphoid tissue

10  
11 NFAT –Nuclear factor of activated T cells

12  
13 NK cell – Natural killer cell

14  
15 NKT cell – Cell type intermediate between an NK cell and a T lymphocyte

16  
17 NLR(P) – NOD-like receptor (protein) *or* Nucleotide-binding domain, leucine-rich repeat-  
18 containing protein

19  
20 NLRP3 – NOD-like receptor protein 3 (same as NALP3)

21  
22 NOD – Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein

23  
24 NOD mouse – Non-obese diabetic mouse

25  
26 NRAMP – Natural resistance-associated macrophage protein

27  
28 NRL allergen – Natural rubber latex allergen

29  
30 NSAID – Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug

31  
32 PAF – Platelet activating factor

33  
34 PALS – Periarteriolar lymphoid sheath

35  
36 PAMP – Pathogen-associated molecular pattern

37  
38 PBC – Primary biliary cirrhosis

39  
40 PBL – Peripheral blood leukocyte, *also* peripheral blood lymphocyte

41  
42 PBMC – Peripheral blood mononuclear cell

43  
44 PCA test – Passive cutaneous anaphylaxis test

45  
46 PCB – Polychlorinated biphenyl

47  
48 PCDD – Polychlorinated dibenzodioxin

49  
50 PCDF – Polychlorinated dibenzodioxin

51  
52 PDGF – Platelet-derived growth factor

53  
54 PF – Platelet factor

1  
2  
3 PFC – Plaque forming cell  
4  
5 PHA – Phytohemagglutinin  
6  
7 PKC – Protein kinase C  
8  
9 PLC- $\gamma$  – Phospholipase C $\gamma$   
10  
11 PLNA – Popliteal lymph node assay  
12  
13 PMA – Phorbol myristate acetate (same as TPA)  
14  
15 PPD – Purified protein derivative  
16  
17 PR3 – Proteinase 3  
18  
19 pre-BCR – Pre-B cell receptor  
20  
21 PRR – Pattern recognition receptor  
22  
23 PSC – Primary sclerosing cholangitis  
24  
25 PWM – Pokeweed mitogen  
26  
27 PYD – Pysin (N-terminal homology) domain  
28  
29 RA – Rheumatoid arthritis  
30  
31 RADS – Reactive airways dysfunction syndrome  
32  
33 RAG – Recombination-activating gene  
34  
35 RANTES – Regulated upon activation normal T cell expressed and secreted  
36  
37 RARF – Ra-reactive factor  
38  
39 RAST – Radioallergosorbent test  
40  
41 RES – Reticuloendothelial system  
42  
43 RIA – Radioimmunoassay  
44  
45 ROI – Reactive oxygen intermediates  
46  
47 ROS – Reactive oxygen species  
48  
49 RSS – Recombination signal sequence  
50  
51 RSV – Respiratory syncytial virus  
52  
53 SALT – Skin-associated lymphoid tissue  
54  
55 SAPK – Stress-activated protein kinase  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 SAT – Spontaneous autoimmune thyroiditis  
4  
5 SCA – Single-chain antibody  
6  
7 SCID – Severe combined immunodeficiency  
8  
9 SCLE – Subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus  
10  
11 SHM – Somatic hypermutation  
12  
13 SIgAD – Selective immunoglobulin A deficiency  
14  
15 SIGLEC – Signaling lectins  
16  
17 SIS – Skin immune system  
18  
19 SLA – Soluble liver antigen  
20  
21 SLE – Systemic lupus erythematosus  
22  
23 SMAC – Supramolecular adhesion complex  
24  
25 SNP – Single-nucleotide polymorphism  
26  
27 SOC protein – Small outer capsid protein  
28  
29 SRBC – Sheep red blood cell  
30  
31 SSc – Systemic sclerosis  
32  
33 STAT – Signal transducer and activator of transcription  
34  
35 TAP – Transporter associated with antigen processing  
36  
37 TCDD – 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzodioxin  
38  
39 TCDO – Tetrachlorodecaoxide  
40  
41 TCR – T-cell receptor  
42  
43 TD antigen – Thymus-dependent antigen  
44  
45 TDAR – T-cell dependent antibody response  
46  
47 TdT – Terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase  
48  
49 TEN – Toxic epidermal necrolysis  
50  
51 TG – Thyroglobulin  
52  
53 TGF- $\beta$  – Transforming growth factor beta  
54  
55 TIL – Tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 TLR – Toll-like receptor  
4  
5 TNF – Tumor necrosis factor  
6  
7 TPA – Tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (same as PMA)  
8  
9 TPO – Thyroid peroxidase  
10  
11 TRA –Tumor rejection antigen  
12  
13 TRAF – TNF receptor-associated factor  
14  
15 TSHR – Thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor  
16  
17 TSTA – Tumor-specific transplantation antigen  
18  
19 tTG – Tissue transglutaminase  
20  
21 TUNEL – TdT-dependent dUTP-biotin nick end labeling  
22  
23 UGT – Uridine diphosphate (UDP)-glucuronosyltransferase  
24  
25 VCAM – Vascular cell adhesion molecule  
26  
27 VLA – Very late activation antigen  
28  
29 WG – Wegener granulomatosis  
30  
31 ZAP-70 – Zeta chain (TCR)-associated protein kinase-70 kDa  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## ANNEX II – List of chemicals with known effects on the immune system

Major sources used for compilation of the list were:

IPCS, Immunotoxicity associated with exposure to chemicals, principles and methods for assessment. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 180. World Health Organization, Geneva (1996).

IPCS, Principles and Methods/Assessing Allergic Hypersensitization Associated with Exposure to Chemicals. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 212. World Health Organization, Geneva (1999).

IPCS, Principles and Methods for Assessing Autoimmunity. Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 236. World Health Organization, Geneva (2006).

Kaminski, N.E., Faubert Kaplan, B.L., & Holsapple, M.P., Toxic Responses of the Immune System. In: Klaassen, C.D. (ed.) Casarett and Doull's Toxicology, 7th Ed. McGraw Hill, New York (2008).

Pichler, W.J., ed., Drug Hypersensitivity. Karger, Basel (2007).

### A) Pesticides

#### **carbaryl**

Insecticide associated with alterations of immunoglobulin levels.

#### **dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT)**

Insecticide associated with suppression of various types of inconsistent immune responses.

#### **malathion**

Insecticide exhibiting both immunosuppressive and enhancing effects.

#### **organotins**

Compounds such as the antifouling agent tributyltin, di-n-octyltindichloride and di-n-octyltindichloride that act on maturing and proliferating T-lymphocytes. They are considered prototypes of immunosuppressive chemical agents.

#### **parathion**

Insecticide which suppresses the humoral and cell-mediated immune response.

### B) Environmental contaminants

#### **hexachlorobenzene**

Formerly used pesticide causing increased weight of lymphatic organs and various other immunotoxic effects in rodents.

#### **polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)**

Chemicals, formerly widely used in technology (e.g., in transformer fluids), congeners of which are immunosuppressive to various degrees, reducing thymus weight and antibody-formation in experimental animals.

**polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs)**

Environmental agents whose immunotoxic profile is similar to that of polychlorinated dibenzodioxins.

See also polychlorinated biphenyls.

**polychlorinated dibenzodioxins (PCDDs)**

Products of incomplete incineration and contaminants in 2,4,5-T (formerly widely used as a herbicide and notoriously as Agent Orange in the Vietnam War), 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzodioxin (TCDD) is the most toxic representative of this group of chemicals. It causes *thymic* atrophy and suppression of cell mediated immunity in rodents.

See also *chloracne* in alphabetical entries.

**polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons**

Chemicals released during combustion of fossil fuels, including benzopyrene, 7,12-dimethylbenzanthracene, and 3-methylcholanthrene that suppress humoral and cellular immunity.

**C) Industrial chemicals****acid anhydrides**

Group of reactive chemicals that tend to induce hypersensitivity reactions, such as dermatitis.

**benzene**

Organic solvent that is toxic to the bone marrow and suppresses lymphocytes.

**bisphenol A**

Plasticizer with possibly effects on the immune system via an estrogen-receptor-dependent mechanism.

**formaldehyde**

Highly reactive substance which is an allergen in humans and can potentiate the allergenic effect of other substances.

**polyisocyanates**

Group of reactive chemicals used in paints, which may induce asthma-like symptoms in isocyanate workers, probably by forming neoantigens.

**silica**

Inhaled dust particles of silica are toxic to lung macrophages and may depress immune parameters.

**vinyl chloride**

Monomer for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) production, which may cause a scleroderma-like syndrome.

**D) Drugs**



**D1) with adverse effects****ampicillin**

Antibiotic, often accompanied by exanthema, which is potentiated by cytomegalus virus or mononucleosis infection.

**carbamazepine**

Antiepileptic drug that may cause delayed-type hypersensitivity, leading to a variety of hypersensitivity reactions including life-threatening skin reactions (Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis).

**halothane**

Inhalational anesthetic that may cause autoimmune and allergic hepatitis due to formation of neoantigen.

**hydralazine**

Hypotensive drug that may cause autoimmunity, manifested as systemic lupus erythematosus-like syndrome.

 **$\alpha$ -methyldopa**

Hypotensive drug that may induce autoimmune reactions including hemolytic anemia and autoimmune hepatitis.

**paclitaxel**

Anticancer drug extracted from the Pacific yew tree, which influences microtubule dynamics, causing bone marrow suppression and thrombocytopenia.

**penicillamine**

Therapeutic chelating agent used to eliminate toxic metals such as in treatment of copper overload, but may also cause autoimmune disease such as myositis.

**phenytoin**

Antiepileptic drug that can cause a range of hypersensitivity reactions, similar to those caused by carbamazepine. If a patient has a hypersensitivity reaction to one they are likely to have a similar reaction to the other.

**procainamide**

Antiarrhythmic drug that induces autoimmune disease, manifested as systemic lupus erythematosus-like syndrome.

**propylthiouracil**

Drug used to treat hyperthyroidism that may induce hypersensitivity reactions, leading to agranulocytosis, hepatitis, or a lupus-like syndrome.

**sulfamethoxazole**

Antibiotic that may cause hypersensitivity reactions.

**D2) immunomodulating**

**ascomycin, immunomycin, FK 520**

Ethyl analogue of tacrolimus that inhibits degranulation of mast cells, acting mainly in the skin. See also tacrolimus.

**antihistamine, histamine-1 receptor antagonist**

Drug that blocks a histamine receptor on cell surfaces, thereby counteracting the signal-transducing effects of histamine. In immunotherapy, antihistamine drugs are used to suppress the effects of immunoglobulin E (IgE)-induced histamine release from mast cells in various forms of allergy and inflammation.

**azathioprine**

6-[(1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-imidazol-5-yl)sulfanyl]-7H-purine

Immunosuppressant prodrug that is metabolized to an active species (mercaptopurine), used in organ transplantation and autoimmune diseases.

**azidothymidine (AZT), zidovurine**

Thymidine analogue, which inhibits the reverse transcriptase of human immunodeficiency virus and increases the number of circulating CD4+ cells in patients.

**cyclophosphamide**

Alkylating agent with immunosuppressive features, used to treat some autoimmune diseases.

**cyclosporin A**

T-cell-specific immunosuppressive drug that binds to cyclophilin, inhibiting the production of IL-2. Used to prevent graft rejection and in the treatment of some autoimmune diseases.

**dexamethasone**

Corticosteroid that relieves inflammation (swelling, heat, redness, and pain) and is used to treat certain forms of arthritis; skin, blood, kidney, eye, thyroid, and intestinal disorders (e.g., colitis); severe allergies; and asthma. Dexamethasone is also used to treat certain types of cancer.

**filgrastim**

Analogue of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) pharmacologically used to stimulate the proliferation and differentiation of granulocytes.

**fingolimod, FTY720**

Sphingosine-1-phosphate analog, derived from the fungal product myriocin that inhibits migration of lymphocytes and dendritic cells.

**FK-506**

See tacrolimus.

**immunocyanin**

Immune stimulating drug derived from *keyhole limpet hemocyanin* (KLH).

**Immunokine™**

Commercial preparation of diluted tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO). See tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO).

**keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH)**

1  
2  
3 Large (8-32 megaDalton) multisubunit oxygen-transporting mollusc protein, used to stimulate  
4 immune response (cellular and humoral). Also used as a carrier protein for haptens and in  
5 immunotherapy of bladder cancer. Smaller subunits are also used (e.g., immunocyanin).  
6

7  
8 **methoxsalen**

9 xanthotoxin

10 Herbal furanocoumarin with photosensitizing properties leading to dermatitis after skin contact.  
11 Also used for photochemotherapy of psoriasis.  
12

13 **methotrexate (MTX)**

14 Antimetabolite and antifolate drug used in treatment of cancer and autoimmune diseases.  
15

16 **mycophenolate**

17 Immunosuppressant drug used to prevent rejection in organ transplantation and in treatment of  
18 autoimmune disease.  
19

20  
21 **nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)**

22 Synthetic pharmaceuticals commonly used to treat inflammation and pain of musculoskeletal  
23 disorders. These drugs act by inhibiting cyclooxygenase, a key enzyme in prostaglandin  
24 synthesis. Common NSAIDs are acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin), indomethacin, diclofenac, and  
25 ibuprofen.

26 NSAIDs may have immunologically relevant adverse effects such as bone marrow depression,  
27 aspirin-induced asthma or "salicylate intolerance", a pseudoallergic reaction.  
28

29 **pimecrolimus**

30 Drug structurally related to tacrolimus (fujimycin), which inhibits T-cell activation. It is used for  
31 treatment of atopic dermatitis and psoriasis.  
32

33 **prednisone**

34 1,4-pregnadiene-17,21-diol-3,11,20-trione

35 Synthetic steroid with glucocorticoid action that is used as an antiallergy and  
36 immunosuppressive drug and as an anti-inflammatory agent in the treatment of rheumatoid  
37 arthritis (RA).  
38

39 **sirolimus**

40 See rapamycin.  
41

42 **rapamycin**

43 sirolimus

44 Immunosuppressive drug commonly used after organ transplantation to decrease the risk of  
45 rejection.  
46  
47

48 **tacrolimus**

49 FK-506

50 fujimycin

51 Immunosuppressive drug commonly used after allogenic organ transplantation to decrease the  
52 risk of rejection. It inactivates T lymphocytes by inhibiting signal transduction from the T-cell  
53 receptor. Although its target (FK-506 binding protein) is different than that of cyclosporin, it  
54 inhibits the same pathway and has similar effects on the immune system.  
55  
56

57 **tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO)**  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Chlorite-containing drug used for the dressing of wounds, immunomodulation, and as a  
4 protective agent against radiation. It forms a complex with hemoglobin and stimulates  
5 macrophages.  
6

7  
8 **vitamin D3**

9 Physiological form of vitamin D that suppresses Th1 cytokines and increases Th2 cytokines.  
10

11 **voclosporin**

12 Immunosuppressive drug that acts as a calcineurin inhibitor.  
13

14  
15 **E) Metals and metalloids**  
16

17 **arsenic**

18 Semimetal that is either immunostimulating or immunosuppressing, depending on the chemical  
19 species and condition.  
20

21 **beryllium**

22 Metal that, depending on its speciation, upon chronic inhalation at the workplace, may induce  
23 "chronic beryllium disease", a severe and persistent hypersensitivity reaction of the airways.  
24

25 **cadmium**

26 Metal of both occupational and environmental importance that, depending on its speciation, has  
27 immunostimulating and immunosuppressive effects.  
28

29 **chromium**

30 Metal that, depending on its speciation, may induce hypersensitivity reactions (e.g., chromium  
31 eczema)  
32

33 **cobalt**

34 Metal that, depending on its speciation, induces allergic contact dermatitis.  
35

36 **lead**

37 Metal that, depending on its speciation, is immunosuppressive and decreases resistance to  
38 infections in rodents.  
39

40 **mercury**

41 Mercury chloride induces autoantibodies and autoimmune disease in sensitive rat strains.  
42 Mercury compounds are also immunosuppressive. The organomercury compound thimerosal is  
43 a classical preservative in vaccines.  
44

45 **nickel**

46 Metal which is a common contact sensitizer in the general population.  
47

48 **platinum**

49 Platinum salts induce hypersensitivity reactions such as contact dermatitis and respiratory  
50 symptoms. Cis-platin, a cytostatic compound, inhibits rapidly proliferating B-cells and T-cells.  
51

52  
53  
54  
55  
56 **F) Miscellaneous**  
57  
58  
59  
60

**afatoxin B1, mycotoxin**

Potent carcinogenic compound produced by fungi, which causes suppression of antibody response, probably related to its metabolic bioactivation.

**enzymes, proteolytic**

Proteins that, when airborne, have the potential of any protein to cause hypersensitivity reactions (such as conjunctivitis, rhinitis, or asthma), but may cause additional tissue damage due to proteolysis.

**mitomycin C**

[(4S,6S,7R,8S)-11-amino-7-methoxy-12-methyl-10,13-dioxo-2,5-

diazatetracyclo[7.4.0.02,7.04,6]trideca-1(9),11-dien-8-yl]methyl carbamate

One of a family of antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces caespitosus* and used as an anti-tumor agent. It may cause pancytopenia.

**oxidant gases**

Ozone and nitrogen oxides, when inhaled, impair functions of alveolar macrophages and augment pulmonary allergic reactions.

**sulfite**

Food additive that may cause a pseudoallergic reaction (sulfite-intolerance) in sensitive individuals.

### ANNEX III – Autoantibodies in autoimmune disease

#### a) Autoantibodies in organ-specific autoimmune disorders

Target organ/system	Diagnosis	Autoantibody specificity
<b>Endocrine system</b>		
Thyroid	Hashimoto thyroiditis	Thyroperoxidase (microsomal antigen, 107 kDa)
	Primary myxedema (atrophic thyroiditis)	Thyroglobulin (conformation specific)
	Endocrine ophthalmopathy	Thyroglobulin, acetylcholine esterase
	Basedow disease	Extracellular domain of the receptor for thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH)
Pancreas	Diabetes mellitus type 1, Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy	Insulin-producing $\beta$ -cells of the Langerhans islets Glutamate decarboxylase (GAD 65 and 67) Insulin Protein IA2 (ICA512/40 kDa) and IA $\beta$ (Phogrin/37 kDa) Surface of islet cells
	Adrenal cortex	Addison disease, Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy type 2 Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy type 1
Parathyroid gland	Hypoparathyroidism	Cells of the parathyroid, parathormone
Pituitary gland	Insufficiency of pituitary, autoimmune polyendocrinopathy	Corticotropin, prolactin, growth hormone, steroid-hormone-producing cells
Hypothalamus	Diabetes insipidus, polyendocrinopathy	Vasopressin-producing cells

<b>Hematological system</b>		
Erythrocytes	Hemolytic anemia	Rh-system
	Cold agglutination syndrome	Blood group substance I
	Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria	Blood group substance P
Thrombocytes	Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) Autoimmune thrombocytopenia (AITP)	GP I <sub>b</sub> /III <sub>a</sub> (125, 95 kDa), I <sub>b</sub> /IX (135/25 kDa and 22 kDa) and V (82 kDa)
Granulocytes	Agranulocytosis	Membrane of granulocytes; NA1/NA2 (Fc receptor type III), NB1 (58-64 kDa glycoprotein)  Neutrophilic adhesion glycoprotein complex CD11b/CD18 (CR3, Mac-1, $\alpha$ m: $\beta$ 2 integrin)  TSH receptor-like antigen
<b>Gastrointestinal tract</b>		
Stomach	Chronic atrophic gastritis, Pernicious anemia	Parietal cells
	Funicular myelosis	Intrinsic factor  H <sup>+</sup> /K <sup>+</sup> ATPase $\alpha$ - and $\beta$ -subunit
Gut	Crohn disease	Pancreas secret  Colonic epithelial cells (40 kDa protein)  Neutrophils (pANCA)
		Ulcerative colitis
	Sprue/celiac disease	(Gliadin)  Endomysium  Reticulin  Tissue-transglutaminase

Liver	Autoimmune hepatitis	Nuclei (DNA-histone) (ANA) Smooth muscle antigens (actin) (SMA) Soluble liver/liver-pancreas antigen (LP/SLA) UGD tRNA associated protein Liver-kidney microsomes (cytochrome P450IID6) (LKM1) Liver-membrane antigen (LMA; 26 kDa) Asialoglycoprotein receptor protein (AGPRP)
	Primary biliary cirrhosis	<u>Mitochondria:</u> M2 (subunits of the 2-oxoacid dehydrogenase complex: 70, 56, 52, 45, 36 kDa) <u>Nuclei:</u> Nuclear dots (sp100) Nuclear membrane (gp210) Centromeres
	Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)	Neutrophils (pANCA)
<b>Other organs</b>		
Heart	Dilative cardiomyopathy	Sarcolemma, myolemma Mitochondria (M7: FAD-part of flavoenzymes) ADP/ATP nucleotide translocator Calcium channels $\beta$ -Adrenoreceptor
		Cardiac infarction
	Atherosclerosis	Oxidized 'low density lipoprotein' (LDL)
Kidney	Idiopathic necrotizing glomerulonephritis	Neutrophils (pANCA: myeloperoxidase)
	Collagen disorders	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
Kidney/Lung	Goodpasture syndrome	Glomerular basement membrane ( $\alpha$ 3 chain)



		of type IV collagen)
Muscle	Myasthenia gravis	Acetylcholine receptor
	Myositis	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
Skin	Pemphigus vulgaris	Desmosomes (desmoglein 3 ; 130 kDa)
	Pemphigus foliaceus	Desmosomes (desmoglein 1: 160 kDa; plakoglobin: 85 kDa))
	Bullous pemphigoid	Hemidesmosomes, BP 230 (BPAG1: intracellular part of hemidesmosomes) and BP 180 (BPAG2: extracellular part), junction of epidermal cells
	Dermatitis herpetiformis	Dermal-epidermal junctions Jejunal mucosa, reticulin
	Epidemiolysis bullosa acquisita	Type VII collagen
	Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Systemic sclerosis (SSc), Dermatomyositis	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
	Central nervous system	Polyneuropathy
	Guillain-Barré-syndrome (GBS)	Gm1
	Neuropsychiatric SLE	CNS-tissue, neuronal structures, phospholipids
	Cerebral vasculitis	CNS-tissue, neuronal structures, phospholipids
	Cerebral infarction	Phospholipids
	Rasmussen encephalitis	Glutamate receptor
	Functional somatic syndromes (fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue, etc.)	Neurotransmitter (i.e., serotonin)
	Funicular myelosis	Intrinsic factor
	Encephalomyelitis disseminata	Myelin basic protein
	Schizophrenia	Perinuclear structures of neurons

	Alzheimer disease	Perinuclear structures of microglial cells
	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	Ca <sup>2+</sup> -channel (L-type)
	Paraneoplastic polyneuropathies	Neuronal and nuclear antigens
Eye	Primary uveitis, keratitis	Epithelial cells of the cornea, lens proteins/crystallins, retinal antigens (retinal-S-protein, rhodopsin, opsin, interphotoreceptor-retinoid-binding protein)
Ear	Sensorineural hearing loss, tinnitus	Structures of the inner ear, nuclei, cytoskeletal antigens

### b) Autoantibodies in systemic autoimmune disorders

Disorders	Autoantibody specificity	Target antigen
<b>Collagen disorders</b>		
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	Nuclei (ANA)	Different nuclear antigens
	dsDNA	Double stranded DNA
	ssDNA	Single stranded DNA
	Sm	Small nuclear ribonucleoprotein particles (snRNP) MW 29, 28, 16, 13 kDa
	SSA/Ro	Ribonucleoprotein-containing uridine-rich nucleic acid [hY(human cytoplasmic)1, hY3, hY4, hY5]; most important proteins: MW 60, 52 kDa
	Lamin B	Nuclear membrane protein, 70 kDa
	M5	Mitochondrial protein
	Heat shock proteins	90 kDa
	CNS-tissue	Target antigens unknown
	Ribosomal P protein	Ribosomal Phosphoproteins P0, P1, P2
Phospholipids	Cardiolipin, Phosphatidylserine, $\beta$ 2-glycoprotein	

	Thrombocytes	
	Erythrocytes	Rh-system, blood group substances
Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)	RNP	Ribonucleoprotein complex with U1snRNA (70, 33, 20 kDa)
Primary Sjögren disease	SSA/Ro	See under SLE; 60, 52 kDa, associated with cytoplasmic hYRNA subunits
	SSB/La	Phosphoprotein (48 kDa), associated with different small RNAs
	Rheumatoid factor	IgG Fc-region
Progressive systemic sclerosis (SSc)	Scl 70	Topoisomerase I: 100 kDa protein, 70 kDa after denaturation
	Nucleoli	RNA-polymerase I, PM-Scl (11-16 proteins), sno (small nucleolar) RNP (i.e. fibrillarin), nucleolus organizing region (NOR) 90
	Centromeres	CENP-A, -B, -C
Poly/dermatomyositis	<u>Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases</u>	
	Jo-1	Histidyl-tRNA-synthetase (50 kDa)
	PL-7	Threonyl-tRNA-synthetase (80 kDa)
	PL-12	Alanyl-tRNA-synthetase (110 kDa)
	EJ	Glycyl-tRNA-synthetase (75 kDa)
	OJ	Isoleucyl-tRNA-synthetase (150 kDa)
	KJ	Protein in the transcription process
	SRP	Signal recognition particle
	<u>Nuclear antigens</u>	
	PM-Scl	Antigen in the nucleolus, consist of 11-16 proteins with MW 20-110 kDa)
	Mi-2	Antigen consist of 6 proteins
	U1-RNP	70, 33, 22 kDa proteins of U1-snRNP
	Ku	DNS-binding proteins, MW 70 and 80-86 kDa

Rheumatoid arthritis	Nuclei	Antigen not known
	Rheumatoid factor	IgG, Fc-part
	CCP	Cyclic citrullinated peptide
	hsp	Heat shock proteins
	RA33 (hnRNP-complex)	Heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein-complex (30 proteins)
<b>Vasculitis</b>		
Wegener disease (WG)	cANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, cytoplasmic staining (proteinase 3)
Leukocytoclastic vasculitis	cANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, cytoplasmic staining (proteinase 3)
	pANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, perinuclear staining (myeloperoxidase)
Microscopic angiitis	pANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, perinuclear staining (myeloperoxidase)
Churg-Strauss syndrome	cANCA	See above
	pANCA	See above
Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)	Phospholipids, Lupus anticoagulant	See aboveCardiolipin, phosphatidylserine, $\beta$ 2-glycoprotein and others
<b>Autoimmune angioedema</b>		
Autoimmune angioedema	C1-inhibitor	C1-inhibitor

**ANNEX IV – Therapeutic agents (monoclonal antibodies or fusion proteins) for human autoimmune disorders and tumors**

**a) Agents for autoimmune disorders**

Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Adhesion molecules	$\alpha 4:\beta 1$ and $\alpha 4:\beta 7$ integrin	mAb humanised	Natalizumab	Relapsing/remitting multiple sclerosis Rheumatoid arthritis Inflammatory bowel disease
	ICAM-1	mAb	Enlimomab	Rheumatoid arthritis, stroke
	ICAM-1	20 base pair nucleotide chain hybridising with ICAM-1 mRNA and reducing ICAM-1 expression	ISIS-2301 (Alicaforsen)	Inflammatory bowel disease
B-cells	CD20-specific	mAb, chimeric	Rituximab	Rheumatoid arthritis Systemic lupus erythematosus Multiple sclerosis
		mAb humanised	Ocrelizumab	Rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis
		mAb human	Ofatumumab	Rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis
	CD22	mAb humanized	Epratuzumab	Autoimmune diseases
	B-cell activating factor (BAFF)	mAb human	Belimumab	

	BAFF and APRIL (proliferation induced ligand)	Fusion protein binding to BAFF and APRIL	Atacept	Systemic lupus erythematosus, Multiple sclerosis
T-cells	CD3	mAb humanised	Visilizumab	Inflammatory bowel disease, Type 1 diabetes mellitus
		mAb murine	Muromonab-CD3	Rejection after transplantation
	CD25 (IL-2 receptor)	mAb humanised	Daclizumab	Ulcerative colitis
		mAb Chimeric	Basiliximab	Ulcerative colitis
	CTLA4	Immunoglobulin fusion protein	Abatacept	Psoriasis, Rheumatoid arthritis, Multiple sclerosis
	CD58 (LFA-3)	Immunoglobulin fusion protein	Alefacept	Psoriasis
	CD52	mAb humanised	Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H)	Multiple sclerosis
Cytokines	TNF $\alpha$	mAb chimeric	Infliximab	Rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, psoriasis-arthritis
		mAb human	Adalimumab	Rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, Crohn's disease, Spondylitis ankylosans
		Recombinant TNF $\alpha$ -receptor	Etanercept	Rheumatoid arthritis
		mAb human	Golimumab	Rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, Spondylitis ankylosans
		Humanized ab to TNF $\alpha$ -fragment	Certolizumab (CPB870)	Rheumatoid arthritis, Crohn's disease
	IL-1	Receptor antagonist	Anankira	Rheumatoid arthritis
	IL-6 receptor	mAb humanized	Tocilizumab	Rheumatoid arthritis

	mAb against IL-6 receptor	Atlizumab	Crohn's disease
IL-15	mAb human	HuMax	Rheumatoid arthritis
IL-12	mAb human	ABT-874/J695	Crohn's disease
IL-12/23	mAb human	Ustekinumab	psoriasis
IL-5	mAb humanised	Mepolizumab	Churg-Strauss-Syndrome, Hypereosinophilic syndrome
TNF $\alpha$ , IL-2, IL-12, IFN $\gamma$	decapeptide	RDP58	Ulcerative colitis

### b) Agents for tumors

Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Growth factor	VEGF	mAb humanized	Bevacizumab	Colorectal carcinoma, bronchial carcinoma, Breast cancer, Macular degeneration
		EGFR	mAb chimeric ab	Cetixumab
	EGFR	mAb human	Panitumumab (ABX-EGF)	Colorectal cancer
		mAb human	Panitumumab	Colorectal cancer
B-cells	CD20	mAb chimeric	Rituximab	Non-hodgkin B-cell lymphoma
		mAb, murine, $^{90}\text{Y}$ -labelled	Ibritumomab-Tiuxetan	Non-hodgkin B-cell lymphoma (radioimmunotherapy)
		mAb, murine, $^{131}\text{I}$ -labelled	Tositumomab	Non-hodgkin B-cell lymphoma (radioimmunotherapy)

		mAb humanised	Ocrelizumab	Hematological cancer
		mAb human	Ofatumumab	CLL, Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, B cell lymphoma
	CD22	mAb humanized	Epratuzumab	Non-Hodgkin-Lymphoma, ALL
	CD23	mAb, chimeric	Lumiliximab	CLL
	HLA-DR	mAb humanized	Apolizumab	Solid tumors, ALL, CLL, non-Hodgkin-Lymphoma
	CD80	mAb chimeric	Galiximab	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
T-cell	CD4	mAb human	Zanolimumab	T-cell lymphoma
	CD52	mAb humanised	Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H)	CLL, T-cell lymphoma
	CD33	mAb humanised (loaded with Calicheamicin)	Gemtuzumab - Ozogamicin	AML
	CD25	mAb humanised	Alemtuzumab	CLL, T-cell lymphoma, ALL